Ex Libris
Duquesne University:

60493

distributed

The Romans of Lancelot of the Laik.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 5, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

Lancelot

Lancelot of the Laik:

A SCOTTISH METRICAL ROMANCE,

(ABOUT 1490–1500 A.D.)

RE-EDITED

FROM A MANUSCRIPT IN THE CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY LIBRARY,

WITH AN

INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND GLOSSARIAL INDEX,

BY

THE REV. W. W. SKEAT, M.A.,

LATE FELLOW OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE; AND TRANSLATOR OF THE SONGS AND BALLADS OF UHLAND.

[Second and Revised Edition, 1870.]

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXV.

[*Reprinted from Stereotype Plates, 1889.*]

~~820.8~~
~~E12~~
~~no. 6~~

PR1119
A2
no.6
1870
cop.2

RICHARD CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON & BUNGAY.

PREFACE.

I.—DESCRIPTION OF THE MS., ETC.

A FORMER edition of the present poem was printed for the Maitland Club, in 1839, and edited by Joseph Stevenson, Esq. It has saved me all trouble of transcription, but by no means, I am sorry to say, that of correction. Those who possess the older edition will readily perceive that it differs from the present one very frequently indeed, and that the variations are often such as considerably to affect the sense. Many of the errors in it (such as *casualtyee* for *casualytee*, *grone*, for *gone*, *reprent* for *repent*) are clearly typographical, but there are others which would incline me to believe that the transcription was too hastily executed; several passages being quite meaningless. Near the conclusion of Mr Stevenson's preface we read: "The pieces which have been selected for the present volume[1] are printed with such errors of transcription as have crept into them by the carelessness of the scribe;" a statement which certainly implies that there was no intention on his part of departing from the original. Yet that he sometimes unconsciously did so to such an extent as considerably to alter (or destroy) the sense, the reader may readily judge from a few examples:—

[1] The volume contains other poems besides "Sir Lancelot."

FEB. 24 1955

LINE.	EDITION OF 1839.	TRUE READING OF THE MS.
26.	fatil (*fatal*),	fatit (*fated*).
285.	unarmyt (*unarmed*),	enarmyt (*fully armed*).
682.	can here,	cam nere.
700.	rendit (*rent*),	vondit (*wounded*).
764.	refuse (*refusal*?),	reprefe (*defeat*).
861.	felith (*feeleth*),	fetith (*setteth*).
1054.	vyt,	ryc*h*t.
1084.	speiris,	spuris.
1455.	cumyng (*coming*),	cunyng (*skill*).
1621.	he war,	be war (*beware*).
1641.	promyſ,	punyſ (*punish*).
2010.	ane desyne,	medysyne.
2092.	born,	lorn (*lost*).
2114.	havin,	harm.
2142.	Hymene (!),	hyme (*him*).
2219.	such,	furth (*forth*).
2245.	al so y-vroght,	al foly vroght.
2279.	chichingis (!),	thithingis (*tidings*).
2446.	love,	lore (*teaching*). Etc.

Several omissions also occur, as, *e. g.*, of the word "off" in l. 7, of the word "tressore" in l. 1715, and of four whole lines at a time in two instances; viz., lines 1191-4, and 2877-80. It will be found, in fact, that the former text can seldom be safely quoted for the purposes of philology; and I cannot but think Mr Stevenson's claim of being accurate to be especially unfortunate; and the more so, because the genuine text is much simpler and more intelligible than the one which he has given.

The original MS. is to be found in the Cambridge University Library, marked Kk. 1. 5. It formerly formed part of a thick volume, labelled "Tracts;" but these are now being separated, for greater convenience, into several volumes. The MS. of "Lancelot" has little to do with any of the rest as regards its subject, but several other pieces are in the same hand-writing; and, at the end of one of them, an

abstract of Solomon's proverbs, occur the words, "Expliciunt Dicta Salamonis, per manum V. de F."[1] This hand-writing, though close, is very regular, and my own impression certainly is that the scribe has almost always succeeded in preserving the sense of the poem, though there is much confusion in the dialectal forms, as will be shewn presently.

The present text is as close a fac-simile of the MS. as can be represented by printed letters, every peculiarity being preserved as far as practicable, even including the use of *y* for þ (or *th*); so that the reader must remember that *yow* in l. 94 stands for *thow*, and *yis* in l. 160 for *this*, and so on; but this ought not to cause much difficulty. The sole points of difference are the following:

1. In the MS. the headings "Prologue," "Book I." etc., do not occur.

2. The lines do not always begin (in the MS.) with a capital letter.

3. The letters *italicized* are (in the MS.) represented by signs of contraction. One source of difficulty is the flourish over a word, used *sometimes* as a contraction for *m* or *n*. I have expanded this flourish as an *m* or *n* wherever such letter is manifestly required; but it also occurs where it is best to attach to it no value. In such instances, the flourish occurs most frequently over the last word in a line, and (except very rarely) only over words which have an *m* or *n* in them. It would thus seem that their presence is due to the fact of the scribe wanting employment for his pen after the line had been written, and that the flourish therefore appears over certain words, not so much because the *n* is *wanting* in them, as because it is *there already*. Such words have a special attraction for the wandering pen. Still, in order that the reader

[1] See Mr Lumby's editions of "Early Scottish Verse" and "Ratis Raving," both edited for the E. E. T. S. from this MS. Only the latter of these is in the hand-writing of V. de F.

may know wherever such flourishes occur, they have all been noted down; thus, in l. 46, the stroke over the *n* in "gren̄" means that a long flourish occurs drawn over the whole word, and the reader who wishes to expand this word into "gren*e*" or "gren*n*" may easily do it for himself, though he should observe that the most usual form of the word is simply "gren," as in lines 1000, 1305.

In a few nouns ending in *-l*, the plural is indicated by a stroke drawn through the doubled letter; as in *perillis*, *sadillis*, etc.; and even the word *ellis* (else) is thus abbreviated.

4. I am responsible for all hyphens, and letters and words between square brackets; thus, "with-outen" is in the MS. "with outen;" and "knych[t]ly" is written "knychly." Whenever a line begins with a capital letter included between two brackets, the original has a blank space left, evidently intended for an illuminated letter. Wherever illuminated letters actually occur in the MS., they are denoted in this edition by large capitals.

5. We find, in the MS., both the long and the twisted *s* (f and s). These have been noted down as they occur, though I do not observe any law for their use. The letter "ß" has been adopted as closely resembling a symbol in the MS., which apparently has the force of double *s*, and is not unlike the "*sz*" used in modern German hand-writing. It may be conveniently denoted by *ss* when the type "ß" is not to be had, and is sometimes so represented in the "Notes."

6. The MS. is, of course, not punctuated. The punctuation in the present edition is mostly new; and many passages, which in the former edition were meaningless, have thus been rendered easily intelligible. I am also responsible for the headings of the pages, the abstract at the sides of them, the numbering of the folios in the margin, the notes, and the glossary; which I hope may be found useful. The greatest

care has been taken to make the text accurate, the proof-sheets having been compared with the MS. *three times* throughout.[1]

II.—DESCRIPTION OF THE POEM.

The poem itself is a loose paraphrase of not quite fourteen folios of the first of the three volumes of the French Romance of Lancelot du Lac, if we refer to it as reprinted at Paris in 1513, in three volumes, thin folio, double-columned.[2] The English poet has set aside the French Prologue, and written a new one of his own, and has afterwards translated and amplified that portion of the Romance which narrates the invasion of Arthur's territory by "le roy de oultre les marches, nomme galehault" (in the English *Galiot*), and the defeat of the said king by Arthur and his allies.

The Prologue (lines 1-334) tells how the author undertook to write a romance to please his lady-love; and how, after deciding to take as his subject the story of Lancelot as told in the French Romance, yet finding himself unequal to a close translation of the whole of it, he determined to give a para-

[1] This refers to the edition printed in 1865. In executing the present reprint, the proof-sheets have been once more compared with the MS., and a very few insignificant errors have been thus detected and rectified.

[2] "As to the Romance of Sir Lancelot, our author [Gower], among others on the subject, refers to a volume of which he was the hero; perhaps that of Robert de Borron, altered soon afterwards by Godefroy de Leigny, under the title of *Le Roman de la Charrette*, and printed, with additions, at Paris by Antony Verard, in the year 1494.

> For if thou wilt the bokes rede
> Of Launcelot and other mo,
> Then might thou seen how it was tho
> Of armes," etc. (GOWER: *Confessio Amantis*, Book iv.)

Quoted from Warton's English Poetry, vol. ii., p. 234, *ed.* 1840. I quote this as bearing somewhat on the subject, though it should be observed that *Le Roman de la Charrette* is not the same with *Lancelot du Lac*, but only a romance of the same class. Chaucer also refers to Lancelot in his Nonnes Prestes Tale, l. 392; and it is mentioned in the famous lines of Dante (*Inf.* v. 127)—

> "Noi leggevamo un giorno per diletto
> Di Lancilotto, come amor lo strinse," &c.

phrase of a portion of it only. After giving us a brief summary of the earlier part by the simple process of telling us what he will *not* relate, he proposes to begin the story at the point where Lancelot has been made prisoner by the lady of Melyhalt, and to take as his subject the wars between Arthur and Galiot, and the distinction which Lancelot won in them; and afterwards to tell how Lancelot made peace between these two kings, and was consequently rewarded by Venus, who

"makith hyme his ladice grace to have" (l. 311).

The latter part of the poem, it may be observed, has not come down to us. The author then concludes his Prologue by beseeching to have the support of a very celebrated poet, whose name he will not mention, but will only say that

"Ye fresch enditing of his laiting toung
Out throuch yis world so wid is yroung," etc.[1] (l. 328.)

The first Book introduces us to King Arthur at Carlisle.[2] The king is visited by dreams, which he imagines to forebode misfortune; he therefore convokes all his clerks, and inquires of them the meaning of the dreams, proposing to hang them in the event of their refusal. Thus strongly urged, they tell him that those on whom he most relies will fail him at his need; and when he further inquires if this evil fate can be averted, they answer him very obscurely that it can only be remedied by help of the water-lion, the leech, and the flower; a reply which the king evidently regards as unsatisfactory. Soon after an aged knight, fully armed, enters the palace, with a message from King Galiot, requiring him to give "tribute and rent." Arthur at once refuses, somewhat to the astonishment of the knight, who is amazed at his hardihood. Next arrives a message from the lady of Melyhalt, informing Arthur of the

[1] He does not necessarily imply that the poet invoked was still alive; and we might almost suppose Petrarch to be meant, who was more proud of his Latin poem called "Africa" than of his odes and sonnets. See Hallam's Literary History (4 vols.), vol. i., p. 85. But this is pure conjecture.

[2] But the French has "Cardueil." See l. 2153.

actual presence of Galiot's army. We are then momentarily introduced to Lancelot, who is pining miserably in the lady's custody. Next follows a description of Galiot's army, at sight of the approach of which King Arthur and his "niece," Sir Gawain, confer as to the best means of resistance. In the ensuing battle Sir Gawain greatly distinguishes himself, but is at last severely wounded. Sir Lancelot, coming to hear of Sir Gawain's deeds, craves leave of the lady to be allowed to take part in the next conflict, who grants him his boon on condition that he promise to return to his prison. She then provides for him a red courser, and a complete suit of red armour, in which guise he appears at the second battle, and is the "head and comfort of the field;" the queen and Sir Gawain beholding his exploits from a tower. The result of the battle convinces Galiot that Arthur is not strong enough at present to resist him sufficiently, and that he thus runs the risk of a too easy, and therefore dishonourable, conquest; for which excellent reason he grants Arthur a twelvemonth's truce, with a promise to return again in increased force at the expiration of that period. Sir Lancelot returns to Melyhalt according to promise, and the lady is well pleased at hearing the reports of his famous deeds, and visits him when asleep, out of curiosity to observe his appearance after the fight.

In the Second Book the story makes but little progress, nearly the whole of it being occupied by a long lecture or sermon delivered to Arthur by a "master," named Amytans, on the duties of a king; the chief one being that a king should give presents to everybody—a duty which is insisted on with laborious tediousness. Lines 1320-2130 are almost entirely occupied with this subject, and will be found to be the driest part of the whole narrative. In the course of his lecture, Amytans explains at great length the obscure prophecy mentioned above, shewing that by the water-lion is meant God the Father, by the leech God the Son, and by the flower the Virgin

Mary. Though the outline of a similar lecture exists in the old French text, there would seem to be a special reason for the length to which it is here expanded. Some lines certainly seem to hint at events passing in Scotland at the time when the poem was composed. Thus, "kings may be excused when of tender age" (l. 1658); but when they come to years of discretion should punish those that have wrested the law. Again we find (l. 1920) strong warnings against flatterers, concluding (l. 1940) with the expression,

"Wo to the realme that havith sich o chans!"

Such hints may remind us of the long minorities of James II. and James III.; and, whilst speaking on this subject, I may note a somewhat remarkable coincidence. When King Arthur, as related in Book I., asks the meaning of his dream, he is told that it signifies that "they in whom he most trusts will fail him" (l. 499); and he afterwards laments (l. 1151) how his "men fail him at need." Now when we read that a story is current of a prophetess having told James III. that he was destined to "fall by the hands of his own kindred,"[1] and that that monarch was in the habit of consulting *astrologers*[2] (compare l. 432) as to the dangers that threatened him, it seems quite possible that the poem was really composed about the year 1478; and this supposition is consistent with the fact that the hand-writing of the present MS. copy belongs to the very end of the fifteenth century.

Towards the end of the Second Book, we learn that the twelvemonth's truce draws near its end, and that Sir Lancelot again obtains permission from the lady to be present in the approaching combat, choosing this time to be arrayed in "armys al of blak" (l. 2426).

[1] Tytler's History of Scotland (Edinburgh, 1841), vol. iv., p. 216.

[2] The French text does not say anything about "astronomy." We may especially note the following lines, as *not* being in the French, viz., lines 1473-1496, 1523-1542, 1599-1644, 1658-1680, and the long passage 1752-1998.

In the Third Book Galiot returns to the fight with a host thrice as large as his former one. As before, Gawain distinguishes himself in the first encounter, but is at length so "evil wounded" that he was "the worse thereof evermore" (l. 2706). In the second combat, the black knight utterly eclipses the red knight, and the last thousand (extant) lines of the poem are almost wholly occupied with a description of his wonderful prowess. At the point where the extant portion of the poem ceases, the author would appear to be just warming with his subject, and to be preparing for greater efforts.

In continuance of the outline of the story, I may add that the French text[1] informs us how, after being several times remounted by Galiot, and finding himself with every fresh horse quite as fresh as he was at the beginning of the battle, the black knight attempted, as evening fell, to make his way back to Melyhalt secretly. Galiot, however, having determined not to lose sight of him, follows and confronts him, and earnestly requests his company to supper, and that he will lodge in his tent that night. After a little hesitation, Lancelot accepts the invitation, and Galiot entertains him with the utmost respect and flattery, providing for him a most excellent supper and a bed larger than any of the rest. Lancelot, though naturally somewhat wearied, passes a rather restless night, and talks a good deal in his sleep. Next day Galiot prays him to stay longer, and he consents on condition that a boon may be granted him, which is immediately acceded to without further question. He then requests Galiot to submit himself to Arthur, and to confess himself vanquished, a demand which so amazes that chieftain that he at first refuses, yet succeeds in persuading Lancelot to remain with him a little longer. The day after, preparations are made for another battle, on which occasion Lancelot wears Galiot's armour, and is at first mistaken for him, till Sir Gawain's acute vision detects that the armour

[1] See Appendix.

really encases the black knight. As Lancelot now fights on Galiot's side, it may easily be imagined how utter and complete is the defeat of Arthur's army, which was before victorious owing to his aid only; and we are told that Arthur is ready to kill himself out of pure grief and chagrin, whilst Sir Gawain swoons so repeatedly, for the same reason, as to cause the most serious fears to be entertained for his life. At this sorrowful juncture Lancelot again claims his boon of Galiot, who, in the very moment of victory, determines at last to grant it, and most humbly sues for mercy at the hands of Arthur, to that king's most intense astonishment. By this very unexpected turn of affairs, the scene of dolour is changed to one of unalloyed joy, and peace is immediately agreed upon, to the satisfaction of all but some true-bred warriors, who preferred a battle to a peace under all circumstances. Not long after, Galiot discovers Lancelot with eyes red and swollen with much weeping, and endeavours to ascertain the reason of his grief, but with small success. After endeavouring to comfort Lancelot as much as possible, Galiot goes to visit King Arthur, and a rather long conference takes place between them as they stand at Sir Gawain's bedside, the queen being also present. In the course of it, Galiot asks Arthur what price he would pay to have the black knight's perpetual friendship; to which Arthur replies, he would gladly share with him half of everything that he possessed, saving only Queen Guinevere. The question is then put to Gawain, who replies that, if only his health might be restored, he would wish to be the most beautiful woman in the world, so as to be always beloved by the knight. Next it is put to Guinevere, who remarks that Sir Gawain has anticipated all that a lady could possibly wish, an answer which is received with much laughter. Lastly, Arthur puts the question to Galiot himself, who declares that he would willingly, for the black knight's sake, suffer that all his honour should be turned into shame, whereat Sir Gawain allows him-

self to be outbidden. The queen then obtains a brief private conference with Galiot, and prays him to obtain for her an interview with the black knight, who promises to do what he can to that end. He accordingly sounds the black knight upon the subject, and, finding him entirely of the same mind, does all he can to promote their acquaintance, and is at last only too successful; and at this point we may suppose the Scottish Romance to have stopped, if indeed it was ever completed. For some account of the Romance of Lancelot, I may refer the reader to Professor Morley's English Writers, vol. i., pp. 568—570, and 573; to "Les Romans de la Table Ronde," par M. Paulin Paris; and to the Prefaces to the "Seynt Graal," edited by Mr Furnivall for the Roxburghe Club, 1861, and "La Queste del Saint Graal," also edited by the same for the same club in 1864. In the last-named volume short specimens are given from thirteen MSS. at Paris, ten of which contain the Romance of Lancelot. There are also manuscript copies of it in the British Museum, viz., MSS. Harl. 6341 and 6342, Lansdowne 757, and MS. Addit. 10293.

III.—THE DIALECT OF THE POEM.

In coming to discuss the dialect, we find everywhere traces of considerable confusion; but it is not at all easy to assign a satisfactory reason for this.[1] Certain errors of transcription soon shew that the scribe had before his eyes an older copy, which he mis-read. Thus, in l. 433, we find "set," where the older copy must have had "fet," and which he must have mis-read as "fet;" and again, in lines 2865, 2883, he has, by a similar confusion between "f" and "ſ," written "firſt" instead of "fift." It is most probable that the older copy was

[1] For many valuable remarks upon the dialect of the poem I am indebted to Mr R. Morris.

written in the Lowland Scottish dialect (the whole tone of the poem going to prove this), as shewn by the use of *ch* for *gh*, as in *bricht* for *bright*, (unless this be wholly due to the scribe); by the occurrence of plurals in *-is*, of verbal preterites and passive participles in *-it*, and of words peculiarly Scottish, such as *syne* (afterwards), *anerly* (only), *laif* (remainder), *oft-syss* (oft-times), etc. Moreover, the Northern *r* is clearly indicated by the occurrence of such dissyllables as *gar-t*, 2777, *lar-g*, 2845, *fir-st*, 2958, 3075; with which compare the significant spellings *harrmful*, 1945, and *furrde*, 2583. But, on the other hand, it would appear as if either the author or the copyist had no great regard for pure dialect, and continually introduces Southern and Midland forms, mixing them together in an indiscriminate and very unusual manner. We find, for example, in line 1765,

"Be*ith* larg and iff*is* frely of thi thing,"

the Scottish form *iffis* (give) and the Southern *beith* in close conjunction; and we find no less than six or seven forms of the plural of the past tense of the verb "to be;" as, for example, *war* (3136), *veir* (818), *ware* (825), *waren* (3301), *veryng* (2971), *waryng* (443), etc. If we could suppose that the scribe was not himself a Scotchman, we might in some measure account for such a result; but the supposition is altogether untenable, as the peculiar character of the hand-writing (resembling that found, not in English, but in *French* MSS.) decides it to be certainly Scottish; as is also evident from the occurrence, in the same hand-writing, of a Scotticised version of Chaucer's "Flee from the press."

The best that can be done is to collect a few instances of peculiarities.

1. The broad Northumbrian forms *a*, *ane*, *baith*, *fra*, *ga*, *haill*, *hame*, *knaw*, *law*, *sa*, *wat*, although occasionally retained, are also at times changed into *o*, *one*, *boith*, *fro*, *go*, *holl*, *hom*, *know*,

low, *so*, and *wot*. Thus, at the end of l. 3246, we find *haill*, which could not have been altered without destroying the rime; but in l. 3078, we find it changed, in the middle of the line, into *holl*. In l. 3406, we find *sa*, but only three lines further on we find *so* twice.

So, too, we not only find *tane* (taken), *gais* (goes), but also the forms *tone* and *goß*. See lines 1071, 1073.

2. The true plural form of the verb is shewn by lines 203, 204,

> "Of quhois fame and worschipful dedis
> Clerkis into diuerß bukis *redis*,"

where alteration would have ruined the rime utterly; and the same termination (*-is*) is correctly used in the imperative mood, as,

> ——"fo *giffis* ws delay" (l. 463);
> "And of thi wordis *beis* trew and stable" (l. 1671);

but the termination *-ith* is continually finding its way into the poem, even as early as in the fourth line,

> "*Uprisith* arly in his fyre chare;"

and in the imperative mood also, as,

> "*Remembrith* now it stondith one the poynt" (l. 797).

The most singular point of all, however, is this—that, not content with changing *-is* into *-ith* in the 3rd person singular, the scribe has done the same even in the 2nd person, thus producing words which belong to no pure example of any distinct dialect. Observe the following lines:—

> "O woful wrech, that *levis* in to were!
> To schew the thus the god of loue me sent,
> That of thi seruice no thing is content,
> For in his court yhoue [= thou] *lewith* in disspar,
> And vilfully *sustenis* al thi care,
> And *schapith* no thinge of thine awn remede,
> Bot *clepith* ay and *cryith* apone dede," etc. (ll. 84-90).

Here *levis* is altered into *lewith*, not only unnecessarily, but quite wrongly. For similar mistakes, see ll. 1019, 1369, 1384,

2203. For examples of correct usage, see ll. 1024, 1337, 1796, 2200, 2201.

3. But the terminations which are used in the most confused manner of all are *-en*, *-yne*, and *-ing* or *-yng*. Thus we find the non-Scottish infinitives, *telen* (494), *makine* (191); the constant substitution of *-ing* for *-and* in the present participle;[1] a confusion between the past participial ending *-ine* (more correctly *-yn*), and the present ending *-and*, thus producing such forms as *thinkine* (34), and *besichyne* (418); and also a confusion between *-ing* and the past participial ending *-en*, as *fundyng* for *funden* (465), *fallyng* for *fallen* (1217, 1322, 3267), *swellyng* for *swollen* (1222), and *halding* for *halden* (2259). We even find *-ing* in the infinitive mood, as in *awysing* (424), *viting* (to know, 410), *smyting* (1326), *warnnyng* (1035), *passing* (2148), *schewing* (2736), etc.; and, lastly, it occurs in the plural of the indicative present, instead of the Midland *-en;* as in *passing* (1166), *biding* (2670), and *levyng* (3304).[2]

It may safely be concluded, however, that the frequent occurrence of non-Scottish infinitives must not be attributed to the copyist, since they are probably due rather to the author; for in such a line as

"Of his desir to viting the sentens" (l. 410),

the termination *-ing* is required to complete the rhythm of the line.

In the same way we must account for the presence of the prefix *i-*, as in the line

"Quharwith that al the gardinge was I-clede" (l. 50).

[1] We find the true forms occasionally, as *obeisand* (641), *plesand* (1731), *thinkand* (2173), *prekand* (3089), and *fechtand* (3127). Compare the form *seruand* (122).

[2] "The Scottish pronunciation of *-ing* was already, as it still is, *-een;* and the writer, knowing that the correct spelling of *dwellin*, for example, was *dwelling*, fancied also that *fallen*, *halden* (Sc. *fallyn*, *haldyn*) were *fallyng*, *haldyng*. Lyndesay and Gawain Douglas often do the same. Compare *gardinge* (l. 50), *laiting* (l. 327)."—J. A. H. Murray.

This prefix never occurs in vernacular Scottish; but we may readily suppose that this and other numerous Southern forms of words are due (as in Gawain Douglas and Lyndesay) to the author's familiarity with Chaucer's poems, as evinced by the similarity of the rhythm to Chaucer's, and by the close resemblance of several passages. Compare, for instance, the first seventy lines of the Prologue with the opening passages of "The Flower and the Leaf," and "The Complaint of the Black Knight;" and see notes to ll. 432, 1608. Indeed, this seems to be the only satisfactory way of accounting for the various peculiarities with which the poem abounds.

Mr J. A. H. Murray, in his remarks printed in the preface to Mr Lumby's edition of "Early Scottish Verse," comes to a similar conclusion, and I here quote his words for the reader's convenience and information. "There is no reason, however, to suspect the scribe of *wilfully* altering his original; indeed, the reverse appears manifest, from the fact that the 'Craft of Deyng' has not been assimilated in orthography to 'Ratis Raving,' but distinctly retains its more archaic character; while in 'Sir Lancelot,' edited by Mr Skeat for the Early English Text Society, from the handwriting of the same scribe, we have a language in its continual Anglicisms quite distinct from that of the pieces contained in this volume, of which the Scotch is as pure and unmixed as that of the contemporary Acts of Parliament. With regard to the remarkable transformation which the dialect has undergone in Sir Lancelot, there seems reason, therefore, to suppose that it was not due to the copyist of the present MS., but to a previous writer, if not to the author himself, who perhaps affected *southernism*, as was done a century later by Lyndesay and Knox, and other adherents of the English party in the Reformation movement. The Southern forms are certainly often shown by the rhyme to be original, and such a form as *tone* for *tane* = taken, is more likely to have been that of a Northerner trying to write

Southern, than of a Southern scribe, who knew that no such word existed in his dialect. The same may be said of the *th* in the second person singular. A Scotch writer, who observed that Chaucer said *he liveth*, where he himself said *he lyves*, might be excused for supposing that he would also have said *thou liveth* for the Northern *thow lyves;* but we can hardly fancy a Southern copyist making the blunder.'

4. We find not only the Northumbrian forms *sall* and *suld*, but also *shall, shalt*, and *shuld*.

5. As regards pronouns, we find the Scottish *scho* (she) in l. 1169; but the usual form is *sche*. We find, too, not only the broad forms *thai, thair, thaim*, but also *thei* (sometimes *the*), *ther*, and *them*. As examples of forms of the relative pronoun, we may quote *who, quho, whois, quhois* (whose), *quhom, qwhome* (whom), *quhat, qwhat* (what), and *whilk, quhilk, quhich, quich, wich* (which). *Wich* is used instead of *who* (l. 387), and we also find *the wich*, or *the wich that*, similarly employed. The nominative *who* does not perhaps occur as a *simple* relative, but has the force of *whoso*, or *he who*, as *e. g.*, in l. 1102; or else it is used interrogatively, as in l. 1172.

6. Many other peculiarities occur, which it were tedious to discuss fully. It may suffice, perhaps, to note briefly these following. We find both the soft sound *ch*, as in *wich, sich*, and the hard sound *k*, as in *whilk, reke* (reach), *streke* (stretch), etc.; which are the true Northern forms.

Mo is used as well as *more*.

Tho occurs for *then* in l. 3184; and for *the* in l. 247.

At occurs as well as *that; atte* as well as *at the*, 627, 1055.

The short forms *ma* (make), *ta* (take), *sent* (sendeth), *stant* (standeth), are sometimes found; the two former being Northumbrian.

Has is used twice as a *plural* verb (ll. 481, 496).[1]

[1] "The plural in Scottish always ends in *-s* after a noun or when the verb is separated from its pronoun; we still say *the men hes, the bairns sings, them*

ȝha (yes) occurs in l. 2843; but we also meet with *ȝhis*, or *yis;* with reference to which Mr Morris writes:—"The latter term was not much in favour with the people of the North. Even now *yes* sounds offensive to a Lancashire man. 'Hoo cou'd naw opp'n hur meawth t' sey *eigh* (yea) or *now* (no); boh simpurt on sed *iss;* th' dickons iss hur on him too.—*Tim Bobbin.*'" In fact, the distinction between *ȝha* and *ȝhis*, which I have pointed out in *William of Palerne* (Glossary, s. v. *ȝis*), viz., that *ȝha* merely assents, whilst *ȝhis* shews that the speaker has an opinion of his own, is in this poem observed. Thus, in l. 2843, *ȝha* = "yes, I admit that I do;" but in l. 514, *yis* = "yes, but you had better do so;" in l. 1397, *ȝhis* = "yes, indeed I will;" and in l. 3406, *ȝis* = "yes, but I cannot accept your answer."[1] The true distinction between *thou* and *ye* (William of Palerne, Pref. p. xli) is also generally observed. Thus the Green Bird, in the Prologue, considers the poet to be a fool, and calls him *thou;* but the clerks, in addressing Arthur (l. 498) politely say *ye*. And again, Amytans, when rebuking Arthur, frequently calls him *thou*, without any ceremony. Cf. ll. 659, 908, 921, 2839, &c.

As regards the vocabulary, we find that some Northumbrian terms have been employed, but others thrown aside. Thus, while we find the Northumbrian words *thir* (these), *traist* (trust), *newis* (neives, fists), *radour* (fear), etc., we do not, on the other hand, meet with the usual Scottish word *mirk*, but observe it to be supplanted by *dirk* (l. 2471). So, again, *eke* is used in the sense of *also*, instead of being a verb, as more usual in Northern works. We may note, too, the occurrence of *frome* as well as *fra*, and the Scottish form *thyne-furth* (thenceforth) in l. 2196.

'*at cums*, not *have, sing, come*. Notice the frequent use of *th* for *t*, as in l. 497, *Presumyth* = *presumit*, presumed, it being presumed."—J. A. H. Murray. [Or, *presumyth* may be the pl. imperative, as in *Remembrith* (l. 797), already noticed.—Ed.]

[1] "This *ȝis* is the common form in the Scottish writers, though *ay* is largely the modern vernacular."—J. A. H. Murray.

The spelling is very various. We find even four forms of one word, as *cusynace, cusynece, cusynes, cwsynes;* and, as examples of eccentric spelling, may be quoted *qsquyaris* (squires, l. 3204), whilst in l. 3221 we find *sqwar*.

Both in the marginal abstract and in the notes I have chiefly aimed at removing minor difficulties by explaining sentences of which the construction is peculiar, and words which are disguised by the spelling. For the explanation of more uncommon words, recourse should be had to the Glossarial Index.

APPENDIX.

EXTRACTS FROM THE FRENCH ROMANCE OF "LANCELOT DU LAC."

As it seems impossible to do justice to the story of Lancelot without giving due attention to the famous French Romance, and since a portion of the French text is really necessary to complete even that fragment of it which the Scottish author proposed to write, the following extracts have been made with the view of shewing (1) the general outline of the earlier part of the story, (2) the method in which the Scottish author has expanded or altered his original, and (3) the completion of the story of the wars between Arthur and Galiot.[1]

I. Headings of the chapters of the French Romance, from its commencement to the end of the wars with Galiot.

[The commas are inserted by the present editor, and the expansions marked by italics.]

¶ Cy commence la table du premier volume de la table ro*n*de lancelot du lac.

¶ Comment apres la mort de vterpandragon roy du royaulme de logres, & apres la mort aramon, roy de la petite bretaigne, le roy claudas de la terre Descosse mena guerre contre le roy ban de benoic et le roy boort de gauues ta*n*t quil les desherita[2] de leurs terres. Fueillet. i.

Claudas, king of Scotland, deprives king Ban and king Boort of their lands.

[1] The extracts are from the Paris edition of 1513, 3 vols. folio, a copy of which is in the King's Library in the British Museum. There are also two other editions in the Museum, one in the Grenville Library, 3 vols. Paris, 1494, folio; the other in one folio volume, Paris, 1520. [2] See ll. 1447-1449.

Claudas besieges Ban in the Castle of Trible.

¶ Comment le roy claudas assiegea le chasteau de trible auquel estoit le roy ban de benoic, et comment ilz parlementerent ensemble. f. i.

King Ban, his wife, and his son Lancelot repair to the court of Arthur.

¶ Comment le roy ban de benoic, accompaigne de sa femme et de son filz lancelot, auecq*ues* vng seul escuyer, se partirent du chasteau de trible pour aller querir secours deuers le roy Artus a la grant bretaigne. Fueillet ii.

The Castle of Trible is treacherously given up to Claudas.

¶ Comment apres ce que le roy ban fut party de son chasteau de trible, le seneschal a qui il auoit baille la garde trahit ledit chasteau, et le liura es mains du roy claudas. Fueillet. ii.

King Ban dies of grief, and Lancelot is taken away by the lady of the lake.

¶ Comment le roy ban mourut de dueil quant il veit son chasteau ardoir et brouyr. Et comment la dame du lac emporta son filz lancelot.[1] Fueillet. iiii.

¶ Comm*ent* la royne helaine, apres que le roy fut mort et elle eut perdu son filz, se rendit nonnain en labbaye du monstier royal. Fueillet. v.

¶ Comment le roy de gauues mourut | & co*m*ment la Royne sa femme, pour paour de claudas, sen partit

The two sisters, widows of kings Ban and Boort, retreat to a monastery.

de son chasteau pour aller au monstier royal, ou sa seur estait rendue. et comment ses enfans Lyonnel et Boort luy furent ostez. Fueillet vi.

¶ Comment la royne de Gauues, apres que son seigneur fut mort et que elle eut perdu ses deux enfans, se vint rendre au monastere ou estoit sa seur la royne de benoic. Fueillet vi.

Merlin's love for the lady of the lake.

¶ Comment merlin fut engendre du dyable : Et comment il fut amoureux de la dame du lac. Fueillet vii.

Sir Farien secretly nourishes the two sons of king Boort, and is made seneschal to king Claudas.

¶ Comm*ent* le cheualier farien, qui auoit tollu a la royne de Gauues ses deux enfans, les emporta en sa maison | et les feist nourrir vne espace de temps. Et comment le roy claudas fut amoureux de la femme du dict Farien | et pource le fist son seneschal. Fueillet viii.

Claudas accuses Sir Farien of treason.

¶ Comment le roy claudas fist appeller son cheualier farien de trahison par ladmonnestem*ent* de sa femme, disant quil gardoit les deux enfans du roy boort de gauues Fueillet. viii.

Claudas, in disguise, visits Arthur's court.

¶ comment le roy claudas en maniere de cheualier estrange, se partit du royaulme de gauues pour aller en la grant bretaigne a la court du roy artus pour veoir sa puissa*n*ce & son gouuernement. Fueillet x.

The lady of the lake informs Lancelot that he is a king's son.

¶ Comment la dame du lac bailla a lancelot vng maistre pour linstruyre comme il appartenoit a filz de roy. Fueillet xii.

¶ Comm*ent* la royne helaine alloit faire chascun io*ur*

[1] Lines 215, 220.

son dueil au lieu ou son seigneur mourut | et de la alloit au lac ou elle perdit son filz. Fueillet xv.

¶ Comment le bon Religieux qui auoit dit nouuelles a la royne helaine de son filz lancelot, print conge de elle, et sen vint au roy artus en la grant bretaigne. Fueillet xvi.

¶ Comment la dame du lac enuoya sa damoyselle a la court du roy claudas, pour delyurer les deux enfans au roy boort que claudas tenoit en prison. Fueillet xvii. — The lady of the lake seeks to deliver the sons of king Boort.

¶ Comment farien, seneschal du roy claudas par le commandement de son seigneur, alla querir en prison les deux filz au roy de Gauues. Fueillet xviii.

¶ Comment les deux enfans au roy de gauues blecerent le roy claudas, & occirent dorin son filz | et comment la damoyselle du lac les emmena en semblance de deux leuriers. fueil. xix. — Lyonnel and Boort wound king Claudas, and slay his son Dorin.

¶ De la grant ioye et du grant honneur que la dame du lac fist aux deux enfans quant elle les veit en sa maison. Fueillet xx.

¶ Comment le roy claudas mena tres grant dueil pour la mort de dorin son filz que boort auoit occis. Fueillet xx. — Claudas bewails his son's death.

¶ Comment farien et le peuple de la cyte de gauues sesmeurent contre le roy claudas a cause que il vouloit faire mourir les deux filz au roy boort de gauues. Fueillet. xxi.

¶ Comment le roy claudas se partit de gauues | et comment ceulx dudit lieu le vouloient occire, se neust este farien le bon cheualier. f. xxiii. — Farien saves Claudas' life.

¶ Comment le roy claudas se deffendit vaillamment contre ceulx de Gauues qui le vouloyent occire. Fueillet. xxv.

¶ Comment lyonnel et boort perdirent le boire et le manger pource quilz ne scauoyent nouuelles de leur maistres | lesquelz estoyent demourez auec le roy claudas | & comment la dame du lac enuoya vne sienne damoyselle a gauues pour les amener. Fueillet. xxvii.

¶ Comment, par le conseil des barons de gauues : leonce & lambegues sen allerent auecques la damoyselle pour veoir leurs seigneurs lyonnel et boort. Fueillet xxviii. — Leonce and Lambegues go to seek Lyonnel and Boort.

¶ Comment la dame du lac sen retourna apres ce quelle eut monstre a leonce et a lambegues les enfans du roy de gauues leurs seigneurs, et comment lesditz cheualiers sen retournerent a gauues. Fueillet xxx.

¶ Comment le roy claudas retourna a gauues, pour soy venger de la honte quon luy auoit faicte, et pour la mort de son filz. Fueil. xxxi. — Claudas meditates revenge.

¶ Comment lappointement fut fait entre le roy claudas et les barons, par le moyen de farien et lambegues son nepueu. fueillet. xxxiii.

Death of Farien.

¶ Comment farien | sa femme, et son nepueu lambegues sen partirent pour aller veoir lyonnel et boort, qui estoyent au lac | & comment farien mourut. Fueillet xxxv.

The widow of king Boort sees her children and Lancelot in a vision, and dies.

¶ Comment les deux roynes menerent saincte vie au monstier royal | et comment celle de gauues veit ces deux enfans & lancelot en aduision | et comment elle trespassa de ce siecle. Fueillet. xxxv.

Arthur holds a tournament, and Banin, son of king Ban, is the victor.

¶ Comment le roy artus assembla le iour de pasques tous ses barons, & tint grant court a karahes, et comment banin le filleul au Roy ban emporta le pris du behourdys celluy iour. Fueillet. xxxvi.

The lady of the lake sends Lancelot to Arthur to be knighted, and provides for him white armour.

¶ Comment la dame du lac se pourpensa de mener lancelot au roy artus pour le faire cheualier,[1] et elle luy bailla armes blanches, et partit du lac a tout quarante cheualliers pour le conuoyer. Fueillet xxxvii.

Of the wounded knight who came to Arthur's court.

¶ Comment vng cheuallier naure, lequel auoit vne espee fichee en la teste et deux troncons de lance parmy le corps,[2] vint a la court du roy artus | et comment la dame du lac le mena deuant le roy artus, et luy prya quil le fist cheualier. Fueillet xxxix.

Lancelot is knighted.

¶ Comment messire yuain, a qui le roy Artus auoit recommande lancelot, alla faire sa requeste audit roy artus, que le lendemain il fist ledit lancelot cheualier, et comment ledit lancelot defferra le cheualier naure.[3] Fueillet. xli.

How the white knight defended the lady of Nohalt,

¶ Comment la dame de noehault[4] enuoya deuers le roy artus, luy supplier quil luy enuoyast secours contre le Roy de norhombellande qui luy menoit guerre. Et comment Lancelot requist au roy artus quil luy donnast congie dy aller | & il luy octroya. Fueillet xlii.

and won the battle for her.

¶ Comment le nouueau cheualier aux armes blanches vainquit la bataille pour la dame de noehault. Fueillet xliii.

¶ Comment lancelot apres ce quil se fut party de la dame de noehault, se combatit auec vng cheualier qui lauoit mouille. Fueillet xlv.

How Lancelot conquered the "Sorrowful Castle."

¶ Comment lancelot conquist vaillamment par sa force et proesse le chasteau de la douloureuse garde que nul aultre ne pouoit conquerre.[5] Fueillet xlv.

How Arthur hears of it, and sends Gawain to see if it is true.

¶ Comment les nouuelles vindrent au roy artus que la douloureuse garde estoit conquise par la cheualier

[1] Line 223. [2] Lines 237-245. [3] Lines 249-252.
[4] Line 255. [5] Lines 257-259.

aux armes blanches | Et le roy y enuoya messire gauuain pour en scauoir la verite. Fueillet xlviii.

Gawain is imprisoned, and supposed to be dead.

¶ Comment messire Gauuain fut mys en prison | et comment le roy et la royne entrerent en la premiere porte de la | et la veirent des tumbes ou il y auoit escript que monseigneur gauuain estoit mort, et plusieures aultres cheualiers. Fueillet. xlix.

Lancelot hears of Gawain's imprisonment,

¶ Comment vne damoyselle de lhostel de la dame du lac feist assauoir au cheuallier blanc que monseigneur gauuain & ses compaignons estoyent emprisonnez par celluy qui auoit este seigneur de la douloureuse garde. Fueillet l.

and delivers him and his companions.

¶ Comment le blanc cheualier se combatit encontre celluy qui auoit este seigneur de la douloureuse garde, qui tenoit en prison messire gauuain et ses compaignons.[1] Fueillet. l.

¶ Comment le cheuallier blanc emmena le cheualier conquis en vng hermitaige. et comment ledit cheualier conquis luy rendit audit hermitage gauuain & ses compaignons. f. lii.

Gawain returns to Arthur and his Queen at Douloureuse Garde.

¶ Comment messire gauuain et ses compaignons sen vindrent par deuers le roy artus qui estoit a la douloureuse garde. Et comment le roy et la royne furent ioyeulx quant ilz les virent. Fueillet. liii.

Lancelot hears of the war to come between Arthur and Galiot.

¶ Comment le cheuallier blanc retourna a labbaye ou il auoit laisse ses escuyers | et comment il sceut lassemblee qui deuoit estre entre le roy artus et le roy doultre les marches, & comment il conquist le cheualier qui disoit mieulx aymer le cheualier qui auoit naure que celluy qui lauoit este.[2] Fueillet. liiii.

Gawain goes to seek the white knight,

¶ Comment messire gauuain se mist en queste pour trouuer le blanc cheuallier.[3] Et comment la meslee dentre les gens au roy des cent cheualiers et les gens de la dame de noehault fut appaisee. Fueillet lv.

who is wounded in the battle against Galiot by the king-of-a-hundred-knights.

¶ Comment le blanc cheualier vainquit lassemble dentre les deux roys | et comment il fut naure du roy des cent cheualiers. Fueillet. lvi.

Arthur and Queen Genure return home.

¶ Comment apres que le cheualier qui auoit gangne le tournoyement dentre le roy doultre les marches sen fut alle, le roy artus & la royne genieure se partirent pour aller en leurs pays. Fueillet lvii.

¶ Comment messire gauuain se combatit a brehain-sans-pitie, et le rua par terre. et comment apres ilz sen allerent a la douloureuse garde: & comment les deux pucelles que messire Gauuain menoit luy furent tollues. Fueillet. lviii.

[1] Lines 263, -4. [2] See ll. 244, -5. [3] Line 267.

Lancelot ends the adventures of the "Sorrowful Castle."

¶ Comment lancelot print congie de son mire | et comment il mist a fin les aduentures de la douloureuse garde. Fueillet . . . lx.

Lancelot is again victorious in the combat between Arthur and Galiot.

¶ Comment messire gauuain recouura les deux pucelles qui luy auoyent este tollues, Et comment lancelot vainquit la seconde assemblee dentre le roy artus & le roy doultre les marches. Fueillet . . . lxi.

Gawain returns to Arthur's court.

¶ Comment messire gauuain retourna a la court du roy artus apres la seconde assemblee dentre le roy artus & le roy doultre les marches, et comment lancelot vainquit le cheualier qui gardoit le gue. Fueillet lxiii.

[*Here begins the Scotch Translation.*]

Arthur's evil dreams.

¶ Comment le roy Artus songea plusieurs songes | et apres manda tous les saiges clercs de son royaulme pour en scauoir la signifiance.[1] Fueillet . . lxiiii.

Galiot defies Arthur.

¶ Comment le roy doultre les marches, nomme gallehault, enuoya deffier le roy artus[2] | et comment Lancelot occist deux geans empres kamalot.[3] Fueillet lxv.

Lancelot is assailed by forty knights, and imprisoned by the lady of Melyhalt.

¶ Comment lancelot occist vng cheualier q*ui* disoit moins aymer le cheualier naure que celluy qui lauoit naure.[4] | et comment il fut assailly de .xl. cheualliers, et mys en prison de la dame de mallehault.[5] Fueillet lxviii.

Lance'ot, released from prison, is again victorious against Galiot.

¶ Comment gallehault assembla au roy artus vng iour durant que lancelot estoit en prison[6] | et comment le lendemain lancelot fut deliure de prison[7] | et vainquit lassemblee dentre les deux roys.[8] Fueillet lxvii.

Arthur is reproved by Amytans, and Galiot proposes a truce for a year.

¶ Comment le roy artus fut reprins de ses vices, et moult bien conseille par vng cheualier qui suruint en son ost[9] | Et comment gallehault donna tresues au roy Artus iusques a vng an.[10] Fueillet . . lxix.

Lancelot returns to the lady of Melyhalt.

¶ Comment lancelot, apres ce quil eut vaincu lassemblee, retourna en la prison de la dame de mallehault[11] | et comment elle le congneut, a son cheual et par les playes quil auoit, que cestoit celluy q*ui* auoit vaincu lassemblee.[12] Fueillet . . lxxii.

Gawain, with 39 comrades, departs to seek the red knight.

¶ Comment messire gauuain, soy quarantiesme de compaignons, se mist en queste pour trouuer le cheuallier qui auoit porte lescu vermeil a lassemblee dentre le roy artus et Gallehault.[13] Fueillet . . lxxii.

The lady of Melyhalt accepts Lancelot's ransom.

¶ Comment la dame de mallehault mist a rancon le cheuallier quelle tenoit en prison, et le laissa aller quant elle veit quelle ne peult scauoir son nom.[14] fu. lxxiii.

[1] Lines 363-527. [2] Lines 540-592. [3] Line 280.
[4] Lines 233-252. [5] Lines 281-292 [6] Lines 634-894.
[7] Lines 895-974. [8] Lines 975-1138. [9] Lines 1275-2130.
[10] Lines 1543-1584. [11] Lines 1139-1152. [12] Lines 1181-1274.
[13] Lines 2161-2256. [14] Lines 2347-2442.

¶ Comment messire gauuain et ses compaignons retournerent de leur queste[1] | et comment apres les treues faillies galehault vint assembler contre le roy artus, & tous ses gens en furent moult troublez.[2] fu. lxxiiii.

The truce ended, Galiot again attacks Arthur.

¶ Comment gallehault suyuit le cheuallier aux noires armes,[3] & fist tant par belles parolles quil lemmena en son ost, dont le roy artus et tous ses gens en furent moult troublez. Fueillet lxxviii.

Galiot gains over the black knight.

¶ Comment lancelot par sa prouesse conquist tout, et fist tant que gallehault crya mercy au roy artus. fu. lxxix.

Lancelot induces Galiot to submit to Arthur.

¶ Comment gallehault fist tant que la royne vit lancelot | & comment ilz se arraisonnerent ensemble. fu. lxxxi.

The Queen and Lancelot meet.

¶ Comment la royne congneut lancelot apres ce quil eut longuement parle a elle, & quil luy eut compte de ses aduentures. & comment la premiere acointance fut faicte entre la royne & lancelot par le moyen de galehault. fu. lxxxii.

The Queen knows Lancelot from his adventures that he tells her.

¶ Comment la premiere acointance fut faicte de galehault & de la dame de malehault par le moyen de la royne de logres, & comme[nt] lancelot & galehault sen alloyent esbatre & deuiser auecques leurs dames. fu. lxxxiiii.

Galiot becomes acquainted with the lady of Melyhalt.

II. The Chapter of the French romance from which the translator has taken the beginning of his First Book is here given, in order to shew in what manner he has treated his original. It begins at Fol. lxiii. *a*, col. 1.

Comment le roy artus songea plusieurs songes, et apres manda tous les sages clercz de son royaulme pour en scauoir la signifiance.

Arthur's evil dreams.

OR dit le compte que le roy artus auoit longuement seiourne a cardueil. Et pource ny auenoit mie grandement de aduentures, il ennuya moult aux compaignons du Roy de ce quilz auoient si longuement seiourne, & ne veoient riens de ce quilz souloyent veoir. Principallement keu le seneschal en fut trop ennuye Et en parloit moult souuent, et disoyt deuant le roy que trop estoit ce seiour ennuyeulx, & trop auoit dure. Le roy luy demande "Keu | que vouldriez vous que nous feissons?" "Certes," fait keu, "ie conseilleroye que nous allissions a kamalot | car la cite est plus aduan-

King Arthur being at Cardueil,

his knights are annoyed at meeting with no adventures.

Sir Kay counsels that they should go to Camelot.

[1] Lines 2504-2530. [2] Lines 2531-3268.
[3] Lines 3343-3487.

tureuse q*ue* vous ayez | et la nous verrions souuent et orrions choses de merueilles que nous ne voyons pas icy. Nous auons seiourne ia icy plus de deux moys, et oncques ne y veismes gueres de choses aduenir." "Or alons donc," fait le roy, "a Kamalot, puis que vous le conseillez." Lendemain deust partir le roy | mais la nuyct luy aduint vne merueilleuse aduenture. Il songa q*ue* tous les cheueulx de sa teste cheoient, et tous les poilz de sa barbe, dont il fut moult espouente. Et par ce demoura encores en la ville. La tierce nuyt apres il songa q*ue* il luy estoit aduis q*ue* tous les dois luy cheoient fors les poulces, & lors fut plus esbahy que deuant.

The king consents to go;

but the same night dreams that all his hair falls off, which delays him.

The third night after he dreams that all his fingers fall off except his thumbs.

A Lautre nuyct songea il q*ue* tous les ortelz des piedz luy cheoient fors les poulces. de ce fut si trouble que plus ne peult. "Sire," fait son chappelain a qui il lauoit dit, "ne vous chaille | car songes ne sont pas a croire;" le roy le dit a la royne, et elle respond tout ainsi q*ue* luy auoit fait son chappelain. "En verite," dist il, "ie ne laisseray pas la chose ainsi" | il fait mander ses euesques et archeuesques q*u*ilz soient a luy au .ix iour ensuyuant a kamalot, & q*u*ilz amainent auec eulx tous les plus sages clercz quils pourroient auoir et trouuer. A tant se part de cardueil & sen va par les chasteaulx et par les citez | tant q*ue* au neufniesme iour est venu a kamalot, et aussi sont venus les clercz du pays. Il leur demande conseil de son songe, *et* ilz elisent dix des plus sages: le roy les fist bien enserrer, et dist que iamais nen sortiroient de prison deuant quilz luy auroient dit la signifiance de son songe. Ilz esprouuerent la force de leur science par neuf iours, et puis vindrent au roy, & dirent quilz nauoient riens trouue. "Ainsi maist dieu," dit le roy, "ia ainsi neschapperez." Et ils demandent respit iusques au troisiesme iour ensuyuant, et il leur donne. Les .iii iours passez, ilz reuiennent deuant le roy, et dient que ilz ne peuent riens trouuer | et demandent encores autre delay | et ilz ont. Et de rechief vindrent pour demander aultres troys iours de dilacion, ainsi que le roy auoit songe de tierce nuyt en tierce nuyt. "Or sachez," fait le roy, "q*ue* iamais plus nen aurez." Quant vint au tiers iour ilz dirent quilz nauoient rien trouue; "ce ne vault rien," fait le roy, "ie vous feray tous destruire se vous ne me dictes la verite;" et ils dirent. "Sire nous ne vous en scairions que dire" Lors se pense le roy quil leur fera paour de mort. Il fait fair vng grant feu, & commanda en leurs presences que les .v. y fus-

Again, that all his toes fall off except his great toes.

The Queen and his chaplain disregard the dreams;

but Arthur sends for his bishops, archbishops, and their wisest clerks;

whom he imprisons till they shall tell him what the dreams mean.

After trying for nine days, they fail.

They twice obtain a delay of three days.

The king threatens to slay them.

Five are to be burnt, and five hung.

sent mis, et que les autres cinq soyent penduz | mais priuement deffent a ses baillifz quilz ne les menassent que iusques a la paour de mourir. Quant les cinq qui furent menez aux fourches euerent les cordes entour leurs colz, ils eurent paour de mourir, et dirent, que se les aultres cinq le vouloyent dire, ilz le diroyent. La nouuelle vint au .v. que len menoit ardre | et ilz dirent que, se les autres le vouloyent dire, ils le diroyent | ils furent amenez ensemble deuant le roy, et les plus sages dirent | "sire, nous vous dirons ce que nous auons trouue | mais nous ne vouldrions mie que vous nous tenissiez a menteurs se il ne aduenoit | car nous vouldrions bien quil nen fust rien, et voulons, comment quil en aduiengne, que vous nous asseurez que ia mal ne nous en aduiendra;" et il leur promet. Lors dist lung de eulx qui pour tous parla. "Sire, sachez que ceste terre et tout honneur vous conuiendra perdre et ceulx en qui plus vous fiez vous fauldront; telle est la substance et signifiance de voz songes." De ceste chose fut le roy moult effraye, "Or me dictes," fait il, "sil est chose qui men peult garantir." "Certes," fait le maistre, nous auons veu une chose | Mais cest si grande merueille que on ne le pourroyt penser, et ne la vous osons dire." "Dictes," fait il, "seurement | car pis ne me pouez vous dire que vous mauez dit." "Sire, riens ne vous peult garder de perdre tout honneur terrien fors le lyon sauluaige, et le mire sans medecine, par le conseil de la fleur, & se nous semble estre si grande folie que nous ne losions dire | Car lyon sauluaige ne y peult estre, ne mire sans medecine | ne fleur qui parlast|" le roy est moult entreprins de ceste chose: mais plus en fait belle chiere que le cueur ne luy apporte. Ung iour alla le roy chasser au boys bien matin | et mena auec luy messire gauuain, keu le seneschal, et ceulx qui lui pleust. Si laisse icy le compte a parler de luy, et retourne a parler du cheualier dont messire Gauuain aporta le nom en court.

The five who are to be hung, having the cords round their necks, offer to speak out.

They stipulate not to be held as liars if their interpretations fail.

The dreams mean that he will lose his land and his honour.

Arthur asks if anything can avert such fate.

He is told, "nothing, except the savage lion and the leech without medicine, by help of the counsel of the flower."

Arthur goes to the chase.

QVant[1] le cheuallier qui lassemblee auoyt vaincu se partast de la ou il se combatist a son hoste, il erra toute iour sans autre aduanture trouuer. Il se logea la nuyt chiez une veufue dame a lyssue dune forest a cinq lieues angleches pres de kamelot. Le cheualier se leua matin, et erra, luy et ses escuyers et sa damoyselle, tant quil encontra vng escuyer. "Varlet," fait il, "scez tu nulles nouuelles?" "Ouy," fait il,

Lancelot on his wanderings.

He meets an esquire,

and asks him, "what news?"

[1] There is no trace of the rest of this chapter in the Scottish poem.

"The queen," he says, "is at Camelot."

Lancelot goes on till he sees a large house, a lady, and her damsel.

He regards her fixedly.

An armed knight, passing, asks him what he is regarding so closely.

He replies, that he looks at what pleases him.

The knight asks if he knows who the lady is,

and he replies that he knows it is the queen.

The stranger takes Lancelot home to lodge with him,

and he is well entertained.

"ma dame la royne est icy pres a kamalot." "quelle royne" fait il "Le femme au roy artus," fait lescuyer. Le cheuallier sen part, et cheuauche tant quil treuue vne maison forte, et voit vne dame en son surcot, qui regardoit les prez et la forest | & auoit auec elle vne damoïselle. Le cheuallier se arreste, et regarde la dame moult longuement tant quil oublie tout autre chose. Et maintenant passa vng cheuallier arme de toutes armes, qui luy dist. "Sire cheualier, que attendez vous?" et celluy ne respond mot | car il ne la pas ouy. Et le cheualier le boutte, et luy demande quil regarde. "Je regarde," fait il, "ce que me plaist: Et vous nestes mie courtois, qui de mon penser me auez iecte." "Par la foy que vous douez o dieu," fait le cheuallier estrange, scauez vous bien qui la dame est que vous regardez?" "Je le cuyde bien scauoir," fait le bon cheualier. "Et qui este elle," fait lautre. "Cest ma dame la royne." "Si maist dieu, estrangement la congnoissez, deables vous font bien regarder dames." "Pourquoy," faict il. "Pource que vous ne me oseriez suyuir par deuant la Royne la ou ie yroye." "Certes," faict le bon cheuallier, "se vous osiez aller la ou ie vous oseray suyuir, vous aurez passez de couraige tous les plus grans oseurs qui oncques furent." A tant sen part le cheualier. Et le bon cheualier va apres. Et quant ilz ont vne piece alle, lautre luy dist, "vous he[r]bergerez ennuyt auec moy, et le matin ie vous meneray la ou ie vous diz;" et le bon cheuallier luy demande sil conuient ainsi faire. "Oy" | fait il. Et il dist que donc lottroyera il. Il geut la nuyt chez le cheualier sur la riuiere de kamalot, et fut moult bien herberge, et sa pucelle | et ses escuyers.

III. Our last extract will shew exactly where the Scottish poem suddenly ceases, and how the story was probably continued. For the latter purpose, four chapters of the French Romance are added beyond the point where the Scotch ends; and it is possible (judging from lines 306-312 of the Prologue) that the author did not intend to go very much further. The passage begins, in the French copy, at Fol. lxxvii. *b*, col. 1; and, in the Scotch poem, at l. 3427.

Galiot gives Lancelot his own horse,

Lors descent de son cheual, et la baille au cheualier. Et celluy si y monte sans arrest. Et gallehault monta sur vng autre, et vient a son conroy | Si prent auec

soy les dix mille, et dit quilz voisent assembler deuant; "et vous," fait il au roy vend, "viendres apres, si ne assemblerez mie si tost comme ceulx cy seront assemblez | mais quant les derrains de ceulx de dela seront venus, vous assemblerez, & moy mesmes vous iray querir." A tant amaine les dix mille pour assembler,[1] Et quant il fut entre en la bataille il fist sonner ses busines tant que tout en retentissoit.[2] Quant le noir cheuallier les ouyt venir, si luy sembla que grant effort de gens eut la, si se retrait vng pou vers les siens, et les appella entour luy, & leur dist. "Seigneurs, vous estes tous amys du roy. Or y perra comment vous le ferez."[3] Et messire yuain, qui les vit venir, dist a ses gens, "Or soyes tous asseurs que nous ne perdrons au iourdhuy par force de gens."[4] Et ce disoit il pource quil cuidoit que les gens gallehault fussent tous venus.[5]

and gives orders to his own men.

He commands the trumpets to be sounded.

Lancelot harangues his men.

Sir Yvain comforts Arthur's soldiers.

QVant les .x.m. de gallehault sassemblerent, si fut grande la noise, et moult en abbatent a leur venir | mais quant messire yuain vint, si reconforta moult les gens du roy artus | et tous les fuyans retournent auec luy. Et gallehault sen va arriere a son conroy, et commande quilz cheuauchent fermement | et quilz se frappent es gens du roy artus[6] de telle maniere[7] que nul dentreulz ne demeure a cheual "Vous estes tous frays. Or y perra comment vous le ferez." A tant cheuauchent les conroys deuers leurs gens, Car ilz auoyent ia du pire. Et quant le conroy de Gallehault fut venu, si changa moult laffaire | Car moult y auoyt grant effort de gens. Et fut a leur venue le cheualier noir mis a terre.[8] Et aussi les six compaignons qui toute iour auoyent este pres de luy.[9] Lors vint gallehault, qui le remonta sur le cheual mesmes ou son corps seoit.[10] Et si tost comme il fut monte, il sen reuint a la meslee aussi frays comme il auoit le iour este. Et quant il vint aux coups donner, tous ceulx qui le veoyent sen esmerueilloyent, Ainsi dura la bataille iusques a la nuyt. Et quant il vint au soir ilz se departirent | et toutesfoys les gens du roy Artus en eurent du meilleur. Le bon cheualier se departit de lost le plus coyement quil peut,[11] et sen alla par vng chemin entre les prestz et vng tertre, et cuyda que nul ne le veist | mais Galle-

Galiot orders charge.

Galiot's reserve arriving, his men awhile prevail.

Galiot again remounts Lancelot.

Night arriving, the hosts retreat.

Lancelot trics to depart unobserved,

[1] Line 3432.
[2] Lines 3435-3440.
[3] Lines 3441-3476.
[4] Lines 3477-3480.
[5] Lines 3481-3484.
[6] Lines 3485, 6.
[7] Line 3487 *and last.*
[8] Compare lines 3365-3368.
[9] Lines 3369, 70.
[10] Compare lines 3391-3426.
[11] Compare line 1140.

but is followed by Galiot,

hault sen print tres bien garde, et picqua tant son cheual qui luy fut au deuant par vne adresse, et le vint rencontrer au pied du tertre. Si le salue, et dit 'que dieu le conduit.' Et celuy le regarde en trauers, et luy a a moult grant peine rendu son salut. "Bel amy," fait galehault, "qui estes vous?" "Sire," fait il, "ie suis vng cheualier, ce pouez vous veoir." "Certes," fait galehault, "cheualier estes vous meilleur qui soit | & vous estes lhomme du monde que plus ie vouldroye

who prays him to lodge with him for that night.

honnourer,[1] et si vous suis venu prier que vous herbergez ceste nuyt auec moy." Et il luy dist ainsi comme sil ne lauoit huy veu, "Qui estes vous, sire, qui me auez prie de me he[r]berger?" "Je suis gallehault, le sire de ces gens icy, vers qui vous auez au iourdhuy garanty le royaulme de logres, lequel ie eusse ia conquis se ne fust vostre corps." "Comment" (fait il) "vous estes ennemy de monseigneur le roy artus, et me priez de

Lancelot at first refuses, till Galiot agrees to do whatever Lancelot may require of him,

herberger? | Auec vous ne herbergeray ie mie en ce point." "Haa sire," faict gallehault, "plus feray ie pour vous, et si nay mye a commencer. Et ie vous prie que vous y herbergiez par tel conuenant que ie feray tout ce que me scaurez requerre." A tant se arresta le cheuallier, et dist a gallehault; "Sire, vous promettez assez | mais ie ne scay comment il est du rendre" | et gallehault luy dist. "Sire, se vous he[r]-

and promises to entertain him sumptuously;

bergez ennuyt auec moy, ie vous donneray tout ce que vous oserez diuiser de bouche, et bien vous en feray seur," Et lors luy fiance, & apres luy promet bailler bons plaiges; Adonc sen vont tous deux en lost.

whereupon they return together to Galiot's camp.

¶ Comment gallehault suyuit le cheuallier aux noires armes, et fist tant par belles parolles quil lemmena en son ost, donc le roy artus & tous ses gens en furent moult troublez.

Gawain, seeing Lancelot with Galiot,

MEssire gauuain auoyt veu aller le cheuallier au noir escu, & le eust voulentiers suiuy sil eust peu monter a cheual. Lors regarde contre val la riuiere, et voit gallehault et le cheuallier noir qui retournoyent pour venir a lost, et dist a la royne, "Haa dame, or pouons nous bien dire que nous sommes gens perdus | regardez que gallehault a conquis par scauoir," Et elle regarde, & voyt que cest le cheuallier noir que gallehault emmaine; si en est tant iree quelle ne peut dire mot. Et messire gauuain se pasme en pou dheure plus de

tells the Queen that now they are all lost;

and swoons away more than three times.

trois fois. Le roi artus vint leans | et ouyt le cry que chascun disoit, "il est mort, il est mort." Si vint a luy, et lembrassa, et commenca a plorer moult tendre-

[1] Compare lines 2845-8.

ment. Et reuient monseigneur Gauuain de pasmoison ; Et quant il veit le roy artus, il commence a le blasmer, et dit. "Ores est venu le terme que les clercz vous disrent. Regardez le trɔsor que vous auez huy perdu. celluy vous toldra terre qui toute iour la vous a garantie par son corps, et se vous fussiez preudhomme vous leussiez retenu, ainsi comme a fait le plus preudhomme qui viue, qui par cy deuant lemmaine." Lors voit le roy gallehault, qui emmenoit le cheuallier, dont il a tel dueil que a pou quil ne est cheut | mais de plorer ne se peut tenir, et toutesfois faict il la plus belle chere quil peut pour son nepueu reconforter. Et si tost que il vit en la salle, il fist grant dueil | aussi fist chascun preudhomme.

He tells Arthur that his time of misfortune is come;

for their protector is lost.

Arthur also sees Galiot, and is deeply grieved, but tries to comfort his nephew.

TAnt sont allez gallehault et le cheualier quilz sont venus empres lost, Adonc luy dist le cheualier, "Sire, ains que ie entre dedans vostre ost, faictes moi parler aux deux plus preudhommes que vous ayez et esquelz vous fiez le plus." Et gallehault lottroye. Lors sen va en son tref, et prent deux des hommes du monde ou plus il se fie, et leur dist, "Venez auec moy et vous verrez le plus riche homme du monde." "Comment," font ilz, "nestes vous mie le plus riche qui soit au monde?" "Nenny," dist il | "mais ie le seray ains que ie dorme." Ces deux estoyent le roy premier conquis | et le roi des cent cheualliers. Quant ilz virent le cheuallier, si lui firent moult grant ioye | Car ilz le congneurent bien par ses armes. Et le cheuallier leur demanda qui ilz estoient | et ilz se nommerent sicomme vous auez ouy | et il leur dist. "Seigneurs, vostre sire vous faict moult grant honneur | Car il dit que vous estes les deux hommes du monde que plus il ayme, et entre luy et moy a vne conuenance que ie vueil que vous oyez | Car il ma fiance que pour en nuyt herberger auec luy me donnera ce que ie luy vouldray demander." Et gallehault dist | "vous dictes verite." "Sire," faict le cheuallier, "ie vueil encores auoir la seurte de ses hommes." Et gallehault dist, "Dictes moy comment." "Ilz me fianceront," fait le cheuallier, "que se vous me faillez de conuenant, ilz vous guerpiront et sen viendront auec moy la ou ie diray," Et gallehault dit que ainsi le veult | et il le fait fiancer. Lors appella gallehault le roy premier conquis a vne part, et luy dist. "Allez auant & dictes a mes barons quilz assemblent maintenant a monstre si honnorablement comme ilz pourront, et gardez que en mon tref soient tous les deduys que len pourra trouuer en

Galiot and Lancelot arrive at Galiot's camp,

and Lancelot asks to speak with the two men whom Galiot most trusts.

Galiot takes him to the "first-conquest" king and the king of a hundred knights, and

Lancelot repeats to them his compact with Galiot,

and takes their pledge that they will forsake Galiot if he breaks his agreement, and will go with himself (Lancelot).

Galiot orders all kinds of entertainments to be brought to his tent.

tout lost." Lors sen va celluy au ferir des esperons, & fist le commandement de son seigneur. Et gallehault tient le cheualier aux parolles, luy & son seneschal, tant que le commandement fust fait. Si ne demoura gueres que encontre eulx vindrent deux cens barons qui

Twenty-eight kings, beside dukes and counts, come to the feast, and honour Lancelot as the flower of the knighthood of the world.

tous estoient hommes de gallehault, .xxviii. roys, et les autres estoient ducz et contes ; la fut le cheuallier tellement honnoure que oncques si grant feste ne fut pour vng homme mescongneu comme len fit pour luy a celle fois | et disoient grans & petis, "Bien viengnez, la fleur de la cheualerie du monde" | et il en auoit grant honte. Ainsi vindrent iusques au tref de gallehault, si ne pourroient estre comtez les deduys et les instrumens qui leans estoient. A telle ioye fut receu, et quant il fut desarme,

Lancelot is richly attired, and nobly served.

gallehault luy fit apporter vne robe moult riche, et il la vestit. quant le manger fut prest, ilz se assirent a table, et furent noblement seruis, et le cheualier fut moult honnoure.

After supper four beds are prepared, one larger than the rest, for Lancelot.

APres manger commanda gallehault a faire quatre litz desquelz lung estoit plus grant que les aultres. Quant les litz furent si richement atournez, gallehault maine le cheuallier coucher. Et dist. "Sire, vous gerrez icy ;" "Et qui gerra de la ?" fait le cheualier. "Quattre sergens," faict gallehault, "qui vous seruiront | Et ie iray en vne chambre par dela, affin que vous soyez icy plus en paix." "Haa, Sire, pour dieu," faict il, "ne me faictes gesir plus ayse que ces aultres cheualiers | car tant ne me deuez a vilennir." "Nayez

Galiot awhile departs, and Lancelot falls asleep.

garde," faict galehault, "Car ia pour chose que vous faciez pour moi vous ne serez tenu a villain." A tant sen part gallehault. Et le cheuallier commence a penser au grant honneur que gallehault luy faisoit. Si lenprise moult | puis se coucha, et tantost il sendormit | car moult estoit las ; Et quant gallehault sceut quil fut

Galiot then returns, and lies near Lancelot,

endormy, le plus coyement quil peut se coucha en vng autre lit empres luy | et es deux aultres litz se coucherent deux cheualiers, et nestoyent en la chambre que

and hears how his guest murmurs in his sleep.

eulx quatre, sans plus. La nuyt se plaint moult le cheualier en son dormant, et gallehault loit bien, car il ne dormoit gueres. Ains pensa toute la nuyt a le retenir.

Next day they go to hear mass,

Lendemain le cheualier se leua et alla ouyr messe ; et ia estoit gallehault leue | car il ne voulut mie que le

and Lancelot then demands his arms, wishing to depart.

cheualier laperceust. Quant ilz vindrent du monstier, le cheualier demanda ses armes, & gallehault demande pourquoy. Et il dist quil sen vouloit aller. Et gallehault luy dist. "Beau doulx amy, demourez | et ne cuydez mye que ie vous vueille deceuoir. Car vous

noserez ia riens demander que vous nayez. Et sachez que vous pourriez bien auoir compagnie de plus riche homme que ie suis | mais vous ne laurez iamais a homme qui plus vous ayme." "Sire," faict le cheuallier, "ie demoureray donc puis quil vous plaist. Car meilleure compaignie que la vostre ne pourroye ie mye auoir | Mais ie vous diray presentement le don pourquoy ie demoureray auec vous | et se ie ne lay, ie ny demoureray ia." "Sire," fait gallehault, "dictes seurement et vous laurez, se cest chose que ie puisse acomplir;" Et le cheuallier appella ses deux plaiges et dist deuant eulx, "Je vous demande," fait il, "que si tost que vous serez au dessus du roy artus, que vous luy alliez crier mercy si tost comme ie vous en semondray." Quant gallehault lentent, si en est tout esbahy, et commence a penser. Et les deux roys luy dirent. "A quoy pensez vous icy endroit, de penser nauez mestier | car vous auez tant couru que vous ne pouez retourner." "Comment," faict Gallehault, "cuydez vous que ie me vueille repentir | se tout le monde estoit mien si luy oseroye ie bien donner. mais ie pensoye a vng seul mot quil a dit | mais ia dieu ne maist," dist il, "se vous nauez le don | car ie ne pourroye riens faire pour vous ou ie peusse auoir honte. Mais ie vous prye que ne me tollez vostre compagnie pour la donner a aultruy;" et le cheualier luy creanca. Ainsi demoura | et ilz se asseirent au manger qui estoit appreste. Si font moult grant ioye par tout lost du cheualier qui est demoure. Ainsi passerent celle nuyt. Lendemain gallehault et son compaignon allerent ouyr messe, et gallehault luy deist | "Sire, il est huy iour dassembler; voullez vous armes porter?" "Ouy," dist il. "donc porterez vous les miennes," fait gallehault, "pour le commencement." Et il dist quil les porteroit voulentiers | "mais vous ne porterez armes," feist il a gallehault, "si non comme mon sergent?" "Non," dist il. Lors firent apporter les armes, & armerent le cheuallier du fort haulbert, & des chausses qui trop estoyent longues & lees; Lors se armerent les gens de gallehault. et pareillement les gens du roy Artus, & passerent les lices de telz y eut. Toutesfoys le roy auoyt deffendu que nul ne les passast. Si y eut de bonnes ioustes en pou dheure | si se assemblerent tous les ostz deuant la lice, & commencerent a faire armes. Le roy artus estoit a son estandart, et auoit commande que ilz menassent la royne a sauluete se la desconfiture tournoit sur eulx | quant tous les ostz furent assemblez et le bon cheualier fust arme, si cuida

Galiot induces him to stay,

but again promises to do for him whatever he asks.

Lancelot then demands that Galiot shall submit himself to Arthur.

Galiot is confounded, and ponders, but then grants Lancelot's request.

Lancelot remains with him another night.

Next day, the hosts are again armed for battle.

Lancelot is at first mistaken for Galiot; but is recognized by Gawain.

chascun que ce fust gallehault, & disoyent tous. "Voicy gallehault, voicy gallehault" | messire gauuain le congneust bien & dist. "Ce nest mye gallehault | ains est le cheualier aux armes noires, le meilleur cheualier du monde" | & si tost comme ilz furent assemblez, oncques

Arthur's men cannot stand against Lancelot.

ne se tint le roy Artus ne ses gens depuis que le cheualier y fut arriue | et trop se desconfortoyent du bon cheualier qui contre eulx estoit, si furent menez iusques a la lice. car trop estoient grans gens auec gallehault. au partir des lices ce tindrent vne piece et souffrirent longuement | mais le souffrit ny peut riens valoir. Grant fut le meschief des gens au roy artus. et dit le compte que le cheualier neust mie moins de peine de tenir les gens de gallehault que ilz ne passassent oultre la lice quil auoit de chasser les gens au roy Artus. Et nompourtant moult les auoit supportez | & il les eut mis oultre a force sil eust voulu | mais il demoura emmy le pas pour les aultres detenir. Lors regarda tout entour

Lancelot calls upon Galiot to keep his compact.

de luy, et commenca a hucher | "gallehault, gallehault." et gallehault vient grant alleure, et dist. "bel amy, que voulez vous?" "quoy," faict il, "ie vueil que mon conuenant me tenez;" "Par ma foy," fait gallehault, "ie suis tout prest de lacomplir puis quil vous plaist."

Galiot rides forward, and finds Arthur ready to kill himself for grief, the Queen being escorted away by a guard of forty knights, and Gawain wishing to die.

Lors picque le cheual des esperons & vient iusques a lestandart ou le roy artus estoit, qui faisoit si tresgrant dueil que a peu quil ne se occioit pource quil estoit desconfit. Si estoit ia la royne montee, et lemmenoyent quarante cheualliers. Et monseigneur gauuain, que on vouloit emporter en lictiere | mais il dit quil aymeroit mieulx mourir en ce point que veoir toute cheualerie morte et honnye: si se pasma tellement que len cuydoit bien que il mourust incontinent.

How Lancelot makes Galiot cry mercy to Arthur.

¶ Comment lancelot par la prouesse conquis tout, et fist tant que galehault cria mercy au roy artus.

QVant le cheualier veit gallehault prest dacomplir son conuenant, il iura bien que oncques si loyal compaignon ne fut trouue. Il en a telle pytie quil en souspire moult fort, & dit entre ses dens. "Haa dieu,

Galiot demands to see King Arthur,

qui pourra ce desseruir?" & gallehault cheuauche iusques a lestandart et demande le roy artus. Il vient auant moult dolent & esmaye comme celluy qui tout honneur et toute ioye terrienne cuyde auoir perdue; Et quant gallehault le voit, si luy dit. "sire, roy artus, venez auant, & nayez paour | car ie vueil a vous parler." et quant le roy louyt, il sesmerueille moult que ce peult estre; Et de si loing comme galehault le voit venir, il

and, at sight of him, dismounts, kneels to him,

descend de son cheual et se agenouille, et dit. "Sire,

ie vous viens faire droit de ce que ie vous ay meffait ; si men repens, et me metz en vostre mercy."

and submits himself to him humbly.

QVant le roy lentend, il a merueilleusement grant ioye, et lieue les mains vers le ciel, louant Dieu de ceste aduanture | et se le roy fait bonne chere, encores la faict meilleure Gallehault. et il se lieue de genoulx, & sentrebaisent, en font moult grande chere lung a lautre. lors dist Gallehault | "sire, faictes vostre plaisir de moy | car ie metz en vostre saisine mon corps pour en faire ce que il vous plaira. Et sil vous plaist, ie yray retraire mes gens arriere, & puis reuiendray a vous incontinent." "Allez doncques," fait le roy | "car ie vueil parler a vous." A tant sen part gallehault & reuient a ses gens | & les en faict aller. Et le roy enuoya apres la royne, qui sen alloit faisant grand dueil. et les messages cheuauchent tant que ilz lattaingnent | et sont venus a elle, & luy comptent la ioye que aduenue leur est. Et elle ne le peult croire tant quelle voy les enseignes que le roy luy enuoye. tant coururent les nouuelles que monseigneur gauuain le sceut, lequel en eut grant ioye sur tous les aultres, et dist au roy. "Sire, comment a ce este?" "Certes, ie ne scay," fait il: "mais ie croy que telle a este le plaisir de nostre seigneur." moult est grande la ioye, & moult se esmerueille chascun comment ce peult estre aduenu. Gallehault dist a son compaignon. "que voulez vous que ie face? iay fait vostre commandement; & le roy ma dit que ie retourne | mais ie vous conuoyeray auant iusques a voz tentes." "Haa sire," fait le cheualier, "aincoys vous irez au roy & luy porterez le plus grant honneur que vous pourrez. Et tant auez fait pour moy que ie ne le pourroye desseruir | mais tant vous prye, pour dieu | et pour lamour que vous auez a moy, que nul ne sache ou ie suis" | ainsi sen vont parlant iusques a leurs tentes. chascun scait que la paix est faicte | mais plusieurs en sont dolens | car mieulx aymassent la guerre que la paix. lors sont descenduz les deux compaignons, et si tost quilz furent desarmez, Gallehault print vne de ses meilleures robbes pour aller a la court. et feist cryer par tout son ost que chascun sen allast, fors tant seullement ceulx de son hostel. Apres appella les deux roys, et leur baille son compaignon, & leur commande quilz facent autant de luy comme de son corps mesmes. A tant monte Gallehault, et sen va a la court du roy artus. Et le roy luy vint alencontre, et la royne qui ia estoit retournee, & la dame de malehault auec plusieurs dames & damoyselles. A tant

Arthur, overjoyed, praises God.

Galiot, first asking Arthur's leave, dismisses his troops to their tents.

The Queen and Sir Gawain rejoice greatly.

Lancelot prays Galiot not to reveal where he is, and they return to their tents.

Galiot commits his guest to the care of the two kings, and departs to speak with Arthur.

Arthur and Galiot go together to the tower where Gawain lies ill.

vont en la bretesche ou monseigneur gauuain gisoit malade. et quant il sceut que gallehault venoit, il sefforce de belle chere faire, comme celluy qui oncques mes ne lauoit veu de si pres. lors luy dist | "bien soyez vous venu comme de celluy dont ie desiroye moult lacointance | car vous estes lhomme du monde qui plus

Gawain welcomes Galiot.

doibt estre prise & ayme a droit de toutes gens. Et ie cuyde que nul ne scait si bien congnoistre preudhomme comme vous & bien y a paru." Ainsi parle messire gauuain a gallehault, & il luy demande comment il luy est | et Gauuain dist. "Jay este pres de mort. mais la grant amour qui est entre vous & le roy ma guery."

The Queen, the King, and Gawain rejoice at Galiot's coming,

Moult font grant ioye le roy artus & la royne & monseigneur gauuain de la venue de gallehault | et tout le iour ont parle de amour et daccointance. Mais du noir cheualier ne tiennent ilz nulles parolles | ains passent le iour a resiouyr lung lautre tant quil vint au vespre. Lors demande gallehault congie de ses gens aller veoir.

but he, soon after, departs to see Lancelot for a short time, promising to return.

Et le roy le luy donne | "mais vous reuiendrez," fait il, "incontinent;" et gallehault le luy octroye | si sen reuient a son compaignon & luy demande comment il a lepuis fait | et il luy respondit que bien; "Sire," fait gallehault, "comment feray ie |: le roy ma moult prie que ie retourne a luy, & il me feroit mal de vous laisser en ce point." "Haa, sire cheualier, pour dieu mercy,

Lancelot tells Galiot to do whatever Arthur wishes.

vous ferez ce que monseigneur le roy vouldra. car iamais a plus preudhomme que il est ne eustes accointance. Mais ie vueil que vous me donnez vng don." Et gallehault luy dist. "Demandez ce quil vous plaira | car ie ne vous escondiroye iamais;" "Sire," fait il, "ie vous remercye. Vous me auez donne que vous ne me demanderez mon nom deuant que ie le vous diray." "Et ie men tiendray a tant puis que vous le voulez," dit gallehault. "Et ne doubtez pas que ce eust este la premiere chose que ie vous eusse demande, si men tairay a tant." Lors luy demanda de laccointance du roy artus | mais il ne nomme mie la royne | et gallehault dit que "le roy est moult preudhomme, & moult me poyse que ie ne lay congneu pieca | Car moult en

He charges Galiot again not to ask his name, but to tell him about Arthur.

Galiot praises the Queen,

feusse amende | mais ma dame la royne est sy vaillante que oncques plus honneste dame ne vey." et quant le cheualier ouyt parler de la royne, si se embronche et

and Lancelot sheds tears.

commence a souspirer durement. et gallehault le regarde et se esmerueille moult pource que les larmes luy cheoyent des yeulx, si commence a parler daultre chose.

QVant ilz ont longuement parle ensemble, le cheualier noir luy dist. "Allez, si ferez a monsei-

gneur le roy compaignie, et si escoutez sy vouz orrez de moy nulles parolles, & vous me compterez demain ce que vous aurez ouy." "Voulentiers, sire," faict gallehault | lors le accolle, et dit aux roys. "Je vous baille en garde cest homme comme le cueur de mon ventre." Ainsi sen va gallehault & le cheuallier demeure en la garde de deux preu[d]hommes du pays de Gallehault | mais il ne fault mye demander sil fust honnore | car len faisoit assez plus pour luy quil neust voulu. celle nuyt geurent les deux roys au tref gallehault pour lamour du cheualier & luy firent entendant quilz ny coucheroyent mye | & ilz le firent coucher ainsi que Gallehault auoit fait lautre nuyt. Au commencement dormit le cheualier moult fort, et quant vint a mynuit si commença a soy tourner, et commenca a faire vng dueil si grant que tous ceulz qui entour luy estoyent sen esueillerent. Et en son refrain disoit souuent. "Haa chetif, que pourray ie faire?" Et toute nuyt demena tel deuil. Au matin se leuerent les deux roys le plus coyement quilz peurent | & moult se merueillent quil pouoit auoir. daultre part fut gallehault leue, & vint a son tref veoir son compaignon. Il demande aux deux roys que son compaignon fait. Et ilz luy dient quil auoit toute nuyt mene grant dueil. Lors entre en la chambre ou il estoit, et si tost comme il le ouyt venir il essuye ses yeulx; Adonc gallehault, cuidant que il dormist, saillist dehors de la chambre incontinent; apres le cheualier se leua. Et gallehault vit que il auoit les yeulx rouges et enflez. Adonc le prent par la main, et le tyre a part, et luy dist. "Beau doulx compaignon, pourquoy vous occiez vous ainsi? dont vous vient ce dueil que vous auez toute nuyt demene, & le desplaisir que vous auez? Je vous prye pour dieu que vous me diez la cause, et ie vous ayderay se nul homme mortel y peult conseil mettre;" & commence a plourer si durement comme sil veist mort la chose du monde que mieulx aymast. Lors est gallehault moult a malayse et luy dit, "Beau doulx compaignon, dictes moy vostre mescheance | car il nest nul homme au monde, sil vous auoit riens forfait, que ie nen pourchassasse vostre droit." Et il dist que nul ne luy a riens meffait. "beau doulx amy, pourquoy menez vous doncques si grant dueil? Vous poise il que ie vous ay fait mon maistre & mon compaignon?" "Haa," fait il, "vous auez assez plus fait pour moy que ie ne pourroye desseruir, ne riens du monde ne me met a malaise que mon cueur, qui a toute paour que cueur mortel pourrait

Lancelot asks Galiot to return to Arthur, and to report to him all the conversation.

Lancelot sleeps with the two kings in Galiot's tent;

but awakes at midnight, and makes a great moaning.

Galiot comes to see after Lancelot,

finds him with his eyes red and swoln,

and conjures him to tell him what the matter is.

Lancelot cries bitterly,

and says that it is his heart, which has all the dread that it is possible for mortal heart to have.

auoir. Si doubte moult que vostre grant debonnairete ne me occie." De ceste chose est gallehault moult a malayse, si reconforte son compaignon. Apres allerent ouyr masse. Quant vint q*ue* le prestre eut fait trois parties du corps de nostre seigneur, gallehault se trait auant, et tient son compaignon par la main, & luy monstre le corps de nostre seigneur que le prestre tenoit entre ses mains; Puis luy dist. "doncques ne croyez vous pas bien que cest le corps de nostre saulueur?" "Voirement le croy ie bien," fait le cheualier. Et gallehault luy dist. "beau doulx amy, or ne me mescreez mye que ces trois parties de chair que ie vois en semblance de pain, ia ne feray en ma vie chose q*ue* ie cuyde q*ui* vous ennuye: mais toutes les choses que ie scauray qui vous plairont, pourchasseray a mon pouoir." "sire," fait il, "grant mercys." A tant se taisent iusques apres la messe | et lors demanda gallehault a son compaignon quil fera; "Sire," fait il, "vous ne laisserez mie le roy en ce poi*n*t | ains yrez luy faire compaignie." "Sire," faict il, "grant mercys;" A tant sen part de luy, si le rebaille aux preudhommes de la court du roy artus. si fo*n*t de luy grant signeurie sicomme ilz peuent.

They go to Mass,

and Lancelot declares his belief that the Bread is the Body of Christ.

After Mass, Lancelot bids Galiot go again to Arthur.

ET quant vint apres disner, sy furent le roy & la royne & gallehault appuyez au lict de messire gauuain, tant q*ue* messire gauuain dist a gallehault. "Sire, or ne vous poise dune chose que ie vous demanderay." "Certes," fait galehault, "non fera il." "sire, celle paix qui fut entre vous & mon oncle, par qui fut elle, par la chose au monde q*ui* plus vous aymez?" "Sire," fait il, "vous me auez tant coniure que ie le vous diray. Vng cheualier la fist." "Et qui est le cheualier?" fait messire gauuain. "Si maist dieu," fait gallehault, "ie ne scay." "Qui fut celluy aux noires armes?" deist messire gauuain. "Ce fut," fait il, "vng cheualier;" "Tant," fait il, "en pouez vo*us* bien dire | mais acquitter vous conuient." "Je me suis acquite de ce que me coniurastes. Ne plus ne vous en diray ores | ne rien ne vous en eusse ores dit, se vous ne me eussiez coniure." "Par dieu," faict la royne, "ce fut le cheuallier noir | mais faictes le nous monstrer." "Qui | moy, dame?" faict gallehault, "ie le vous puys bien monstrer sicomme celluy qui ri*ens* nen scait!" "Taisez vous," fait la royne, "il est demoure auec vo*us*, & hier porta voz armes." "Dame," fait il | "il est vray | mais ie ne le vys oncques puis que ie party du roy a la premiere fois." "comment,"

After dinner the King and Queen visit Gawain, and he asks Galiot who made peace between him and Arthur.

"A knight," says Galiot. "But what knight?" asks Gawain.

"The Black Knight," answers the Queen; "show him to us."

"I cannot," says Galiot; "he is not from my country;"

fait le roy, "ne le cognoissiez vous mye | ie cuydoye que il fust de vostre terre." "Si maist dieu, non est," fait gallehault. "certes," fait le roy, "ne de la myenne non est il mye" | Moult tindrent longuement gallehault a parolle le roy et la royne pour auoir le nom du cheualier | mais plus nen peurent traire. et messire gauuain craint quil ne ennuye a gallehault, si dist au roy. "Or en laissez a tant le parler. certes le cheualier est preudhomme, & pleust a dieu que ie luy ressemblasse." Moult loe messire gauuain le cheualier. Si en ont la parolle laissee | et gallehault la recommence et dit. "Sire, veistes vous oncques meilleur cheuallier que celluy au noir escu?" "certes," fait le roy, "ie ne vy oncques cheualier de qui ie aymasse mieulx laccointance pour cheualerie;" "Non" | fait gallehault. "Or me dictes," faict gallehault, "par la foy que vous deuez a ma dame qui cy est, combien vous vouldriez auoir donne pour auoir son accointance a tousioursmais?" "Si maist dieu," faict il, "ie luy partiroye la moytie de tout ce que ie pourroye auoir, fors seullement de ceste dame." "Certes," fait gallehault, "assez y mettriez. Et vous, messire gauuain, se dieu vous doint sante que tant desirez, quel meschief en feriez vous pour auoir compaignie a si preudhomme?" Et quant messire gauuain lot, si pense vng petit comme celluy qui ne cuyde iamais auoir sante. "Se dieu me donnoit la sante que ie desire | ie vouldroye orendroit estre vne des plus belles dames du monde, par conuenant quil me aymast tous les iours de sa vie." "par ma foy," fait gallehault, "assez y auez mis." "Et vous, madame, quel meschef feriez vous par conuenant que vng tel cheualier fust tousiours en vostre seruice?" "par dieu," fait elle, "messire gauuain y a mis toutes les offres que dame y peult mettre." Et monseigneur gauuain & tous aultres se commencerent a rire. "Gallehault," fait messire gauuain, "qui tous nous auez adiurez par le serment que ie vous coniuray, ores qui vouldriez vous y auoir mys?" "Si maist dieu," faict gallehault, "ie y vouldroye auoir tourne mon honneur a honte, par tel si que ieusse a tousioursmais vng si bon cheualier en ma compaignie." "Sy maist dieu," faict messire gauuain, "plus y auez mys que nous." et lors se pensa messire gauuain que cestoit le noir cheualier qui le paix auoit faicte | car pour luy auoit tourne son honneur a honte, quant il veit quil estoyt au dessus. Et le dist gauuain a la royne, & se fut la cause dont gallehault fut plus prise; Moult tindrent longuement parolles du cheualier.

and Galiot will not disclose the knight's name,

but asks Arthur if he ever saw a better knight, and what he would give to know him henceforth.

"Half of all I have, except my wife," says Arthur.

"And what would you give, Gawain?"

"I should like to turn woman if he would love me all his life."

"I can offer no more than Gawain," says the Queen.

"Well," says Galiot, "I would turn all my honour into shame, for his sake."

So Gawain concludes that it was the Black Knight who brought about the peace.

The Queen walks away with Galiot, tells him she loves him much, and prays him to let her see the Black Knight.

et la royne sadressa, et dist quelle sen voulloit aller vers la bretesche pour veoir les prez, et gallehault la conuoye : si le print la royne par la main & luy dist. "Gallehault, ie vous ayme moult, & il est vray que vous auez le cheualier en vostre baillie, & par aduenture il est tel que ie le congnois bien ; si vous prie si cher que vous auez mamour, que vous faciez tant que ie le voye." "Dame," fait gallehault, "ie nen ay encores nulle saisine | & ne le vy puis que la paix fut faicte de moy & du roy. Et se il estoit or en mon tref, si y conuiendroit il aultre voulente q*ue* le vostre & que la mienne. Et bien saichez que tant me auez coniure q*ue* ie mettray tout le pouoir que ie pourray. co*m*ment vous pourrez parler a luy ?"

He promises to do all he can for her;

"se vous en faictes vostre pouoir," fait elle, "ie le verray bien, & ie men attens a vous, et faictes tant que ie soye vostre a tousiours : car cest vng des hommes du monde que ie verroye plus voulentiers."

and the Queen says, "I shall be sure to see him if you try,

"Dame," fait il, "ie en feray mon pouoir." "Grant mercys," fait elle. "Or gardez que ie le voye au plus tost que vous pourrez | car il est en vostre baillie, ie le scay bien | et se il est en vostre terre, enuoyez le querre."

for he is in your custody. Send and get him."

Atant sen part gallehault & sen vient au roy. Et mo*n*seigneur gauuain & le roy lui dient. "gallehault, ie suis deliure de mes gens, ores faictes approcher voz gens des nostres, ou ie feray approcher les nostres des vostres | Car nous sommes a priuee mesgnie."

Arthur wishes Galiot's people and his own to be brought nearer to one another.

"Sire," faict gallehault, "ie feray approcher les miens daultre part de cest riuiere si que mon tref sera endroit le vostre, et sera vne nef appareillee en quoy nous passerons dicy la et de la icy." "Certes," fait le roy, "moult auez bien dit."

Galiot returns to Lancelot,

LOrs sen va Gaillehault en sa tente, et trouue son compaignon mo*u*lt pensif. Il luy demande co*m*ment il a puis fait ; Et il dist, "bien, se paour ne me mestriast." et gallehault dist, "de quoy auez vous telle paour ?" "que ie ne soye co*n*gneu," dist il. "or nen ayez mie paour, car vous ny serez ia congneu, se vostre voulente ne y est ;"

tells him what the King, Gawain, and the Queen have said of him,

Lors luy compte les offres que le roy et messire gauuain ont faict pour luy, et ce que la royne dit | et comment la royne la tenu a grant parlement de le veoir | et comme il luy respondit. "et saichez que elle na de nully si tres grant desir de veoir comme de vous. Et mo*n*seigneur la Roy ma prye que ie face mes gens approcher | car nous sommes trop loing lung de lautre. Or me dictes que vous voulez que je face | car il est en vostre plaisir."

and asks him what answer he shall give the Queen.

"Je loue que vous facez ce que monseigne*u*r le roy vous prye ;" "Et a ma

dame que respondray ie, beau doulx amy?" "Certes," fait il, "ie ne scay." Lors commence a souspirer. Et gallehault luy deist. "Beau doulx amy, ne vous esmayez point | mais dictes moy comment vous voulez quil soit | car bien saichez quil sera ainsi comme vous vouldrez | et ie aymeroye mieulx estre courrouce a la moytie du monde que a vous tout seul. ores me dictes quil vous en plaist." "Sire," faict ledit cheualier, "ce que vous me louerez | car ie suis en vostre garde desormais." "Certes," fait gallehault, "il me semble que pour veoir ma dame la royne il ne vous peult empyrer." Lors apperceut galehault assez de son penser, & le tient si court quil luy octroye ce quil demande | "mais il conuiendra," faict il, "que il soyt faict celeement, que nul ne le saiche | fors moy et vous." Et gallehault dit que il ne se soulcye point. "Or dictes," (fait le cheualier a gallehault,) "a ma dame que vous me auez enuoye querre." "Sur moy en laissez le surplus," dit Gallehault. Lors sen part a tant, et commanda ses trefz a tendre la ou il auoit en conuenant au roy | et son seneschal fist son commandement.

Lancelot sighs,

and says, "Whatever you advise."

"There will be no harm in seeing her," answers Galiot.

Lancelot says the matter must be managed secretly; and they agree that Galiot shall tell the Queen he has sent to seek for Lancelot.

¶ Comment gallehault fist tant que la royne veit Lancelot, Et comment ilz se araisonnerent ensemble, et parlerent de plusieurs choses.

How Guinevere and Lancelot meet and talk.

ATant sen partit gallehault & sen vient au tref du roy, & si tost comme la royne le voit, si luy courut a lencontre, & luy demande comment il auoit exploycte la besongne. "dame," faict il, "ie en ay fait tant que ie craing que lamour de vostre pryere ne me tolle la chose du monde que ie ayme plus." "Sy maist dieu," faict elle, "vous ne perderez riens par moy que ie ne vous rende ou double | mais que y pouez *vous*," fait elle, "perdre?" "Celluy mesmes que vous demandez," fait gallehault | "Car ie doubte quil ne se courrouce, et que ie ne le perde a tousiours." "Certes," faict elle, "ce ne pourray ie pas rendre | mais ia par moy ne le perderez, se dieu plaist. Et touteffoys dictes moy quant il viendra" | "dame," fait il, "quant il pourra | car ie lay enuoye querre, et croy que il ne demourra mye longuement." De leur conseil entendit ung peu la dame de mallehault qui sen prenoit garde et nen faisoit mye semblant. Lors sen partit gallehault et vient a ses gens qui estoyent logez la ou il auoit commande.

The Queen asks Galiot what he has done for her.

"Sent to seek for your knight," says he.

Galiot returns to his men,

QVant il fut descendu, il parla a son Seneschal et luy deist | "quant ie vous enuoyeray querir, venez a moy, vous & mon compaignon en ce lieu la."

and tells his Seneschal to bring Lancelot when he sends for him.

Et le roy des cent cheualiers, qui son seneschal estoit, dist que moult voulentiers feroit son commandement & son plaisir. Lors salua Gallehault son compaignon, et sen retourna a la court. Et quant la royne veit gallehault qui estoit venu, elle luy dist que il gardast bien et loyaulment ce quil luy auoit promis. Et il luy dist | "dame, ie cuyde que vous verrez ennuyt ce que vous auez tant desire." Quant elle ouyt ce, si en fut moult ioyeuse, et moult luy ennuya ce iour pour sa voulente acomplir du desir que elle auoit de parler a celuy ou toutes ses pensees estoyent. Lors luy deist Gallehault, "nous yrons apres soupper en ce vergier la aual" | et elle luy octroye. Quant ce vint apres souper, si appelle la royne | la dame de mallehault | et dame Lore de cardueil, une sienne pucelle, et sen vont tout droit la ou gallehault auoyt dit | et gallehault prent ung escuyer et luy dist. "Va et dy a mon seneschal que il viengne la ou ie luy commanday." Et celuy y va. Apres ne demoura guaires que le seneschal y vint, luy et le cheualier. Ilz estoyent tous deux de grant beaulte; Quant ilz approcherent, si congneut la dame de mallehault le cheualier comme celluy que elle auoyt eu maint iour en sa baillie. Et pource quelle ne vouloit mye que il la congneut, se embroncha, et ilz passent oultre. le seneschal les salue. Et gallehault dit a la royne. "Dame, lequel vous semble il que se soit?" | et elle dit. "Certes, ilz sont tous deux beaulx cheualliers | mais ie ne voy corps ou il puisse auoir tant de prouesse que le noir cheualier auoit." "or saichez, dame, que cest lung de ces deux" | a tant sont venuz auant, et le cheuallier tremble si que a peine peult saluer la royne, & la royne sen esmerueille. lors se agenouillent eulx deux, et le cheualier la salue | mais cest moult pourement | car moult estoit honteux. Lors se pense la royne que cest il. Et gallehault dit au seneschal. "allez, si faictes a ces dames compaignie." Et celluy fait ce que son sire luy commande. A doncques la royne prent le cheualier par la main & le assiet iouxte elle. Sy luy fait moult beau semblant & dit en riant. "Sire, moult vous auons desire, tant que, dieu mercy et gallehault, vous voyons. et nonpourtant encores ne croy ie mye que ce soit celluy que ie demande | & gallehault ma dit que cestes vous | & encores vouldroye scauoir qui vous estes par vostre bouche mesmes, se vostre plaisir y estoit." Et celuy dit que il ne scait | et oncques ne la regarda au visaige. Et la royne ce esmerueille que il peult auoir, tant quelle souspeconne une partie de ce quil a. Et gallehault, qui

Galiot then goes back to the Queen, says he thinks she will see her knight that evening, and appoints to meet her in an Orchard below.

After supper the Queen goes to the Orchard,

and Galiot sends for his Seneschal and the Knight,

who come.

The Queen at first cannot think that either is the black knight,

but one is so bashful that she fixes on him,

seats him by her, smiles on him, says she has so longed to see him,

and now he must tell her who he is. "I don't know," he answers.

le voigt si honteux, pense quil veult dire a la royne son penser seul a seul. lors sen vient messire gauuain celle part, et fait rasseoir les damoyselles pour ce que leuees sestoient encontre luy. Puis commencẽt a parler de maintes choses. Et la Royne dit au cheuallier, "Beau sire, pourquoy vous celez vous de moy? Certes il ne y a cause pourquoy; nestes vous mie celluy qui porta les noires armes, et qui vainquist lassemblee?" "Dame, nenny" | "et nestes vous pas celluy qui porta lendemain les armes a gallehault?" "Dame, ouy;" "Donc estes vous celluy qui vainquistes lassemblee qui fut faicte le premier iour par deuers nous et par[1] deuers Gallehault?" "Dame, non suis." Quant la royne ot ainsi parler le cheualier, a donc appercoit elle bien quil ne veult mie congnoistre quil eust vaincue lassemblee, si len prise mieulx la royne | car quant vng homme se loe luy mesmes, il tourne son honneur a honte | et quant aultruy le loe, adonc il est mieulx prise. "Or me dictes," fait la royne a lancelot | "*qui* vous fist cheuallier?" "Dame," fait il, "vous;" "Moy?" fait elle, "Et quant?" "Dame," fait il, "vous remembrez vous point quant vng cheuallier vint a Kamalot, lequel estoyt naure de deux troncons de lance au corps, et dune espee parmy la teste, et que vng varlet vint a cour*t* en vng vendredy, et fut cheualier le dymenche, et deffera le cheuallier?" "De ce," fait elle, "me souient il bien | et se dieu vous aist, feustes vous ce q*ue* la dame du lac amena en court vestu dune robe blanche?" "Dame, ouy." "Et pourquoy dictes vous donc que ie vous fis cheuallier?" "Dame," fait il, "ie dys vray | Car la coustume est telle que nul ne peut estre cheuallier sans ceindre espee. Et celluy de qui il tient lespee, le faict cheuallier; de vous la tiens ie. Car le roy ne la me donna onques. Pour ce dis ie que vous me feistes cheualier." De ce est la royne mo*ul*t ioyeuse | "ou vous en allastes vous au partir de cour*t*?" "Dame, ie men allay pour secourir la dame de noehault;" "Et durant ce temps me mandastes vous riens?" "Dame, ouy | ie vo*us* enuoyay peux pucelles." "Il est vray," dist la royne. "Et quant vous partistes de noehault, trouuastes vous nul cheuallier qui se reclamast de moy?" "Dame, ouy; vng qui gardoit vng gue, et me dist que descendisse de dessus mon cheual et le vouloit auoir, et ie luy demanday a qui il estoit | et il dist a vous. Puis luy demanday apres, qui le commandoyt. Et il me dist quil nauoyt nul commandement que le sie*n*. Et adoncques remys le pied en lestrief et

[1] The original has *pat*.

Galiot leaves the two to themselves,

and the Queen asks the knight, "Are not you he who wore the black armour, and overcame everyone?"

"No, I am not," saith he,

refusing to praise himself.

"Then who made you a knight, and when?"

"You, at Kamalot, when the pieces of a spear were drawn out of the wounded knight,

and you girded on my sword, thus knighting me,

and I went away to help the Lady of Noehault, and sent you two damsels.

Then I met a man, who said he was your knight,

remontay | Car ie estoye ia descendu | et luy dis que il ne lauoyt point, et me combatis a luy. Et ie scay bien que ie vous fis oultraige, si vous en crie mercy" | "Certes a moy ne en feistes vous point | Car il nestoyt mye a moy | et luy sceuz mauluais gre de ce quil ce reclama de moy. Mais or me dictes on vous en allastes la?" "Dame, ie men allay a la douloureuse garde" | "& qui la conquist?" "Dame, ie y entray" | "et ne vous y viz ie oncques." "Ouy, plus de troys foys." "Et en quel temps?" fist elle. "Dame," fist il, "vng iour que ie vous demanday se vous vouliez leans entrer; Et vous deistes ouy | et estiez moult esbahye par semblant." "Et quel escu portiez vous?" "Dame, ie portay a la premiere foys vng escu blanc a vne bande de belif vermeille. Et lautre foys vng ou il y auoyt deux bendes" | "Et vous vys ie plus?" "Ouy, la nuyt que vous cuidiez auoir perdu messire Gauuain et ses compaignons, et que les gens cryoyent que len me prenist; Je vins hors a tout mon escu a troys bendes." "Certes," faict elle, "ce poise moy | car se on vous eust detenu, tous les enchantements feussent demourez | Mais or me dictes, fustes vous ce qui iettastes messire Gauain de prison?" "Dame, ie y ayday a mon pouoir." "Certes," faict elle, "en toutes les choses que vous me dictes ie nay trouue si non verite. Mais or me dictes qui estoit en vne tournelle dessus la chambre monseigneur." "Dame, cestoyt vne pucelle que ie ne villennay oncques | Car ma dame du lac la me auoyt enuoyee | si me trouua en ceste tournelle | il fut assez qui la honnora pour moy. Quant ie ouy nouuelles de monseigneur Gauuain, si en fut moult angoisseux, et men party de la Damoyselle qui auecques moy debuoit venir, et luy priay que elle ne se remuast tant que elle eust mon messaige ou moy. Si fus si surprins de tresgrant affaire que ie loubliay | et elle fut plus loyalle uers moy que ie ne fus courtois vers elle | car oncques ne se remua iusques a ce quelle eut mes enseignes, et ce fut grant piece apres."

and I fought him (for which I crave your pardon).

After that I took the Sorrowful Castle, and there I saw you thrice,

last when you thought you had lost Gawain and his companions,

and I helped to deliver him from prison."

The Queen asks the knight who was in the turret above his room there.

"A damsel whom I never dishonoured,

but I asked her not to leave till she saw my messenger or me, which I then forgot, and kept her there a very long time."

How the Queen knew Lancelot.

Comment la royne congneut Lancelot apres quil eut longuement parle a elle, et quil luy eut compte de ses aduentures. Et comment la premiere acointance fut faicte entre lancelot et la royne genieure par le moyen de gallehault.

When she heard of this damsel the Queen knew it must be Lancelot,

QVant la royne eut parle de la damoiselle, si scait bien que cest Lancelot. Si luy enquist de toutes les choses quelle auoit ouy de luy, et de toutes le trouua vray disant; "Or me dictes," fait elle, "vous vy ie puis?" "Ouy, dame, telle heure que vous me eustes

bien mestier | car ieusse este noye a kamalot se ne eussiez vous este." "Comment! feustes vous celluy que daguenet le fol print?" "Dame, prins fus ie sans faulte." "Et ou alliez vous?" "Dame, ie alloye apres vng cheuallier." "Et vous combatistes vous a luy" | "dame, ouy." "Et dillec ou allastes vous?" "Dame, ie trouuay deux grans villains que me occirent mon cheual | mais messire yuain, qui bonne aduenture ayt, men donna vng." "Ha, ha," fait elle, "ie scay bien qui vous estes; Vous auez nom lancelot du lac." Il se taist. "Par dieu," faict elle, "pourneant le celez | long temps a que messire Gauuain apporta nouuelles de vostre nom a court;" Lors luy compta comment messire yuain auoit compte que la damoyselle auoit dit | cest la tierce. "Et anten quelles armes portastes vous?" "Vnes vermeilles." "Par mon chef cest verite. Et auant hier pourquoy feistes vous tant darmes comme vous feistes?" Et il commenca a souspirer. "Dictes moy seurement | Car ie scay bien que pour aulcune dame ou damoyselle le feistes vous, et me dictes qui elle est, par la foy que vous me deuez." "Haa, dame, ie voy bien quil le me conuient dire, cestes vous." "Moy?" faict elle. "Voire, dame." "Pour moy ne rompistes vous pas les troys lances que ma pucelle vous porta?" "Car ie me mis bien hors du mandement, dame; ie fis pour elle ce que ie deuz, et pour vous ce que ie peux." "Et combien a il que vous me aymez tant?" "Des le iour que ie fus tenu pour cheuallier, et ie ne lestoye mye" | "Par la foy que vous me deuez, dont vindrent ces amours que vous auez en moy mises?" "dame," fait il, "vous le me feistes faire qui de moy feistes vostre amy, se vostre bouche ne me a menty." "Mon amy!" faict elle, "comment?" "Dame," fait il, "ie vins deuant vous quant ie eu prins congie monseigneur le roy | si vous commanday a dieu, et dis que ie estoye vostre cheuallier en tous lieux. Et vous me dictes que vostre amy et vostre cheuallier voulliez vous que ie feusse. Et ie dys, "a dieu! dame." Et vous distes "a dieu! mon beau doulx amy!" Ce fut le mot qui preudhomme me fera, se ie le suis, ne oncques puis ne fus a si grant meschef que il ne men remembrast. Ce mot ma conforte en tous mes ennuys. Cest mot ma de tous maulx guary. Cest mot ma fait riche en mes pouretez;" "Par ma foy," fait la royne, "ce mot fut en bonne heure dict | et dieu en soyt aoure | ne ie ne le prenoye pas acertes comme vous feistes, et a maint preudhomme ay ie ce dict ou ie ne pensay oncques riens que le dire. Mais la coustume est

and asks him if he was the knight whom Daguenet took. He answers "Yes;" and that two rascals killed his horse, and Ywain gave him another.

"Ah, then your name is Lancelot," says she,

"and for what lady or damsel did you do such feats of arms the day before yesterday?"

"For you, Lady; and for you I broke the three lances that your maiden brought me

for you had made me your *friend*, and said I was your knight in all lands, and bid me adieu as your own sweet friend.

That word has never left me, but always been my strength and wealth."

telle des cheualliers que font a mainte dame semblant de telles choses dont a gueres ne leur est au cueur." Et ce disoit elle pour veoir de combien elle le pourroit mettre en malaise; Car elle veoit bien quil ne pretendoit a autre amour que a la sienne | mais elle se delectoyt a sa malaisete veoir, et il eut si grant angoisse que par vng pou quil ne se pasma | & la royne eut paour quil ne cheist, si appella gallehault, et il y vint acourant. Quant il voyt que son compaignon est si courrouce, si en a si grant angoisse que plus ne peut. "Haa, dame," fait gallehault, "vous le nous pourrez bien tollir, et ce seroit trop grand dommaige." "Certes, sire, se seroit mon;" "Et ne scauez vous pour qui il a tant fait darmes?" faict gallehault. "Certes, nenny," faict elle | "mais, se il est veoir ce qui ma este dict, cest pour moy;" "Dame, se maist dieu, bien len pouez croire | car aussi comme il est le plus preudhomme de tous les hommes | aussi est son cueur plus vray que tous aultres." "Voirement," fait elle, "diriez vous quil seroit preudhomme se vous scauiez quil a fait darmes puis quil fut cheuallier." Lors luy compte tout ainsi comment vous auez ouy | "et saichez quil a ce faict seullement pour moy," fait elle. Lors luy prie gallehault, & dist. "Pour dieu, dame, ayez de luy mercy, et faictes pour moy ainsi comme ie fis pour vous quant vous men priastes." "Quelle mercy voulez vous que ien aye?" "Dame, vous scauez que ie vous ayme sur toutes, et il a fait pour vous plus que oncques cheualier ne fist pour dame, et sachez que la paix de moy et de monseigneur neust ia este faicte se neust il este." "Certes," faict elle, "il a plus faict pour moy que ne pourroye desseruir, ne il ne me pourroyt chose requerre dont ie le peuisse esconduyre | mais il ne me requiert de riens | ains est tant melencolieux que merueilles." "Dame," fait gallehault, "auez en mercy; il est celluy qui vous ayme plus que soy mesmes. Si maist dieu, ie ne scauoye riens de sa voulente quant il vint, fors quil doubtoit de estre congneu, ne oncques plus ne men descouurit." "Je en auray," fait elle, "telle mercy comme vous vouldrez." "Dame, vous auez fait ce que ie vous ay requis; aussi doy ie bien faire ce que vous me requerez." Se dit la royne, "il ne me requiert de riens." "Certes, dame," fait gallehault, "il ne ose | car len ne aymera ia riens par amours que len ne craigne | mais ie vous en prie pour luy, & se ie ne vous en priasse, si le deussiez vous pourchasser. Car plus riche tresor ne pourriez vous conquester." "Certes,"

"Oh, but that was only an ordinary compliment," says Guinevere, to tease him.

This grieves Lancelot so that he nearly faints, at which Galiot is greatly grieved,

tells the Queen that Lancelot is the gallantest and truest of men,

and prays her to have mercy on him.

"What mercy?" says she;

"there is nothing he can ask of me that I will not do; but he will not ask."

"He does not dare," answers Galiot, "but I will ask for him."

fait elle, "ie le scay bien et ie en feray tout ce que vous commanderez." "Dame," fait Gallehault, "grant mercy. Je vous prie que vous luy donnez vostre amour, et le retenez pour vostre cheuallier a tousiours, et deuenez sa loyalle dame toute vostre vie | et vous le aurez fait plus riche que se vous luy auiez donne tout le monde." "Certes," faict elle, "ie luy ottroye que il soyt mien | et moy toute sienne, et que par vous soyent amendez tous les meffaitz." "Dame," faict Gallehault, "grant mercy. Or conuient il commencement de seruice;" "Vous ne deuiserez riens," fait la royne, "que ie ne face." "Dame," faict il, "grant mercy | donc baisez le deuant moy pour commencement de vrayes amours." "Du baiser," faict elle, "ie ne voy ne lieu ne temps | et ne doubtez pas," faict elle, "que ie ne le voulsisse faire aussi voullentiers quil feroit | mais ces dames sont cy qui moult se merueillent que nous auons tant fait, si ne pourroyt estre que ilz ne le vissent. Nompourtant, se il veult, ie le baiseray voullentiers." Et il en est si ioyeulx que il ne peult respondre si non tant quil dict. "Dame," faict il, "grant mercy" | "dame," faict Gallehault, "de son vouloir nen doubtez ia | Car il est tout vostre, bien le saichez, ne ia nul ne sen apperceuera; Nous troys serons ensemble ainsi comme se nous conseillions" | "Dequoy me feroye ie pryer" | faict elle | "plus le vueil ie que vous." Lors se trayent a part, et font semblant de conseiller. La Royne voyt que le cheuallier nen ose plus faire, si le prent par le menton, et baise deuant Gallehault assez longuement. Et la dame de Mallehauli (*sic*) sceut de vray que elle le baisoyt. Lors parla la Royne qui moult estoyt sage & vaillant dame. "Beau doulx amy," faict elle, "tant auez faict que ie suys vostre; Et moult en ay grant ioye. Or gardez que la chose soyt celee. Car mestier en est. Je suys une des Dames du monde dont len a greigneur bien dict, Et se ma renommee empiroyt par vous, il y auroyt layde amour et villaine | et vous, Gallehault, ie vous prye que mon honneur gardez | Car vous estes le plus saige | Et se mal men venoyt, ce ne seroyt si non par vous; Et se ien ay bien et ioye, vous me lauez donnee." "Dame," faict Gallehault, "il ne pourroyt vers vous mesprendre, et ien ay bien faict ce que vous me commandastes. Or vous prye que faciez ma voulente ainsi comme iay fait la vostre;" "Dictes," fait elle, "tout ce quil vous plaira hardyment | car vous ne me scauriez chose commander que ie ne face." "Dame," faict il, "donc mauez vous ottroye que ie

"Then I will grant it," says Queen Guinevere. Galiot prays her to give Lancelot her love, and become his loyal lady all her life.

She promises to be Lancelot's,

and that she will do everything she is told.

"Then kiss Lancelot before me," says Galiot.

This Guinevere agrees to do, if Lancelot wishes it.

Galiot says there is no doubt about Lancelot's wish;

and as he is bashful, the Queen takes him by the chin, and kisses him before Galiot. (The Lady of Mallehault sees her.)

Guinevere tells Lancelot that she is his, but charges him to keep the matter secret,

and Galiot too.

Galiot promises this,

and asks Guinevere to make Lancelot his companion for ever.

seray son compaignon a tousiours." "Certes," fait elle, "se de ce vous failloit, vous auriez mal employe la peine que vous auez prinse pour luy et pour moy." Lors prent le cheuallier par la main, et dict. "Gallehault, ie vous donne ce cheualier a tousiours sans ce que iay auant eu, et vous le me creancez ainsi" | et aussi le cheualier luy creance | "scauez vous," fait elle, "Gallehault, que ie vous ay donne lancelot du lac, le filz au roy ban de benoic ;" Ainsi luy a fait le cheualier congnoistre, qui moult en a grant honte. Lors a gallehault greigneure ioye quil neust oncques | car il auoit maintesfois ouy dire, comme parolles vont, que cestoyt le meilleur cheualier et le plus preux du monde, et bien scauoit que le roy ban auoit este moult gentil homme, et moult puissant de amys et de terre.

She takes Lancelot's hand, gives him to Galiot,

and says she has given him Lancelot of the Lake, son of King Ban.

This gives Galiot more joy than ever he had before, as he had often heard how Lancelot was the gallantest knight in the world.

AInsi fut faicte la premiere acointance de la royne et de lancelot par gallehault | et Gallehault ne lauoit oncques congneu que de veue, et pource luy fait creancer quil ne luy demanderoit son nom tant quil luy dist, ou autre pour luy. Lors se leuerent tous troys, et il anuytoit durement. Mais la lune estoyt leuee, si faisoit cler | Si que elle luysoyt par toute la praerie | Lors sen retournerent a vne part contrement les prez droit vers le tref le cheualier, & le seneschal et gallehault vint apres luy & les dames tant quilz vindrent endroit les tentes de gallehault. Lors enuoya Gallehault son compaignon a son tref, et prent conge de la royne, et gallehault la conuoye iusques au tref du Roy. Et quant le roy les veyt, si demanda dont ilz venoyent. "Sire," fait Gallehault, "nous uenons de veoir ces pres a si peu de compaignie comment vous veez." Lors se assient, et parlent de plusieurs choses ; si sont la Royne et Gallehault moult ayses.

By the bright moonlight they recross the meads towards Lancelot's tent,

and Galiot sends Lancelot there, while he conducts the Queen to Arthur's tent,

and tells him they have only been looking at the fields by themselves.

AV chef de piece se leua la royne, et sen alla en la bretesche ; gallehault la conuoya iusques la. Puis la commande a dieu, et dist quil sen yroit gesir auec son compaignon. "Bien auez fait," dit la royne, "il en sera plus ayse" | A tant sen part gallehault, et vient au roy prendre congie, et dist quil ne luy desplaise, et que il yra gesir auec les gens pource quil ny auoyt geu de grant piece, et dist. "Sire, ie me doibz pener de faire leur voulente | car ilz me ayment moult." "Sire," fait messire gauuain, "vous dictes bien, et len doit bien honnorer telz preudhommes qui les a." Lors sen part gallehault et vient a son compaignon ; Ilz se coucherent tous deux en vng lict, et deviserent la une piece. Si nous laisserons ores a parler de gallehault &

Galiot sees the Queen to her tower,

and then takes leave of Arthur and of Gawain,

and goes to Lancelot's bed.

de son compaignon, et dirons de la royne qui est venu en la bretesche.

QVant gallehault fut party, la royne sen alla en vne fenestre, et commence a penser a ce que plus luy plaisoyt. La dame de mallehault saprocha delle quant elle la vit seulle, et luy dist le plus priuee-ment que elle peut. "Haa, dame! pourquoy ne est bonne la compaignie de quatre?" La royne le ouyst bien, si ne dit mot, et fait semblant que riens nen ouyt. Et ne demoura gueres que la dame dist celle parolle mesmes; la royne lapella et dist. "Dame, pourquoy auez ce dit?" "Dame," fait elle, "pardonnez moi, ie nen diray ores plus | car par aduenture en ay plus dit que a moy napartient | & len ne se doit mi faire plus priuee de sa dame que len est | car tost en acquiert on hayne." "Si maist dieu," fait la royne, "vous ne me pourriez riens dire dont vous eussiez ma haine | ie vous tiens tant a saige et a courtoyse, que vous ne diriez riens qui fust encontre ma voulente | Mais dictes hardy-ment | Car ie le vueil, et si vous en prie." "Dame," fait elle, "donc le vous diray ie | Je dy que moult est bonne la compaignie de quatre; Jay huy veu nouueau accointement que vous auez faict au cheuallier qui parla a vous la bas en ce vergier. Et scay bien que cest la personne du monde qui plus vous ayme, et vous ne auez pas tort se vous laymez | car vous ne pourriez vostre amour mieulx employer;" "Comment," fait la royne, "le congnoissez vous?" "Dame," fait elle, "telle heure a este ouen que ie vous en eusse bien peu faire refus comme vous en pouez ores faire a moy | car ie lay tenu vng an et demy en prison. Cest celluy qui vaincquit lassemblee aux armes vermeilles | & celle de deuant hier aux armes noires, les vnes & les autres luy baillay ie; Et quant il fut auant hier sur la riuiere pensif, et ie luy voulu mander que il fist vaillamment armes, ie ne le faisoye sinon pour ce que ie esperoye quil vous aym-ast; si cuydoye telle heure fust que il me aymast | Mais il me mist tost hors de cuyder, tant me descouurit de son penser." Lors luy compta comment elle lauoyt tenu en prison an et demy | et pourquoy elle lauoit prins. "Or me dictes," fait la royne, "quelle com-paignie vault mieulx de quatre que de troys | car mieulx est vne chose celee par trois que par quatre." "Certes non est cy endroit, et si vous diray. Vray est que le cheualier vous ayme, et aussi fait il gallehault, et desor-mais se conforteront lung lautre en quelque terre quilz soient. Car icy ne seront ilz pas longuement: et vous

Queen Guinevere goes to the win-dow to think,

and the Lady of Mallehault asks her why four are bad company.

At first Guine-vere will not hear this, but the Lady repeats it; the Queen asks why she says it, and the Lady asks pardon, as perhaps she has said too much.

"No," says Gui-nevere,

"speak boldly out; I wish it."

"Then I must say that I think four very good company. I saw the new acquaint-ance you made to-day, and know he is the man who loves you most in the world.

I kept him a year and a half in pri-son, and gave him both the red and the black arms in which he won the tourneys;

and I thought then that he loved me, but he soon undeceived me."

The Queen an-swers, "But tell me why four are better company than three."

"Because, though your knight loves you, he loves Galiot too, and they will not stay here

long, but you will; and if you have no one else to tell your thought to, you will be forced to keep your faith to yourself; but if you will let me be a fourth, we can comfort one another."

demourerez cy toute seule, et ne le scaura nul fors vous | ne si ne aurez a qui descouurir vostre pensee, si porterez ainsi vostre faix toute seulle | mais sil vous pleust que ie fusse la quarte en la compaignie entre nous deux dames, nous solacierons ainsi comme entre eulx deux cheualiers feront, si en seriez plus aise." "Scauez vous," fait la royne, "qui est le cheuallier?" "Se maist dieu," fait la dame, "nenny." "Vous auez bien ouy comment il se couurit vers moy." "Certes," faict la royne, "moult estes apparceuante, et moult conuiendroit estre sage qui vous vouldroit rien embler, & puis que ainsi est que vous lauez aperceu, et que vous me requerez la compagnie, vous laurez | mais ie vueil que vous portez vostre faix ainsi comme ie feray le mien." "Dame," faict elle, "ie feray ce que il vous plaira, pour ci haulte compaignie auoir." "En verite," faict la royne, "vous laurez | car meilleure compaignie que vous ne pourroye ie mye auoir." "Dame," fait elle, "nous serons ensemble toutes les heures quil vous plaira." "Jen suys ioyeuse," faict la Royne. "Et nous affermerons demain la compaignie de nous quattre." Lors luy compte de Lancelot, comment il auoyt ploure quant il regarda deuers elle, "et ie scay que il vous congneut, et saichez que cest lancelot du lac, le meilleur cheuallier qui viue." Ainsi parlerent longuement entre elles deux | et font moult grant ioye de leur accointement nouueau. Icelle nuyct ne souffrit oncques la Royne de logres que la dame de mallehault geust sinon auec elle | mais elle y geut a force. Car elle doubtoyt moult de gesir auec si riche dame; Quant elles furent couchees si commencerent a parler de leurs nouuelles amours; La royne demanda a la dame de mallehault selle a[y]me nulluy par amours, et elle luy dict que nenny. "Saichez, dame, que ie naymay oncques que vne foys, ne de celle amour ne fis ie que penser;" et ce dit elle de lancelot, quelle auoit tant ayme comme femme pourroit aymer homme mortel | Mais elle nen auoit oncques aultre ioye eue, non pourtant ne dit pas que ce eust il este. La royne pensa quelle feroyt ses amours de elle et de gallehault, mais elle nen veult parler iusques a tant quelle scaura de gallehault sil la veult aymer ou non | car autrement ne len requerroit elle pas. Lendemain se leuerent matin elles deux, & allerent au tref du roy, qui gisoit la pour faire a monseigneur gauuain et aux aultres cheualiers compaignie. La royne sesueilla, & dist, "que moult estoyt mauluais qui a ceste heure dormoyt." Lors se tournerent contreual les prez, et dames et damoyselles

Queen Guinevere agrees to this with great joy,

and tells the Lady that the knight is Lancelot of the Lake.

At night the ladies sleep together,

and talk of their new loves,

the Lady of Mallehault saying that she never loved but one, and then only in thought (and that was Lancelot).

The Queen thinks she will make the Lady and Galiot fall in love with one another.

Next morning they go to Arthur's tent and wake him, and then return over the meadows

auec elles. Et ils allerent la ou laccointement damours auoyt este faict, et dict la Royne a la dame de mallehault toute laccointance de lancelot | et comme il estoit esbahy deuant elle, et riens ne luy laissa a dire. Puis commenca a louer gallehault, et dit que cestoit le plus saige homme et le plus vertueulx du monde; "Certes," fait elle, "ie luy compteray lacointance de nous deux quant il viendra, et sachez que il en aura grant ioye. Or allons | car il ne demourra gueres quil ne viengne."

where the meeting with Lancelot took place, and the Queen tells the Lady of Mallehault all about it, and then praises Galiot as the wisest and best man in the world.

The rubric of the next chapter is as follows:

¶ Comment la premiere acointance fut faicte de gallehault et de la dame de malehault par le moyen de la royne de logres. Et comment lancelot & gallehault sen alloient esbatre et deuiser auec leurs dames.

How Galiot became acquainted with the Lady of Melyhalt.

It relates how Queen Guinevere requires Galiot to let her dispose of his love as he had disposed of hers. To this he consents, and she commends him to the Lady of Mallehault. Next, they arrange for the promised *parlement de eulx quatre;* and the queen points out to Lancelot the lady who had so many a day kept him in prison, i. e., the Lady of Mallehault. At recognizing his old acquaintance, Lancelot feels somewhat distressed, but is reassured by observing the new love-making between her and Galiot. Seated in a wood, the four "demourerent grant piece, ne oncques ne tindrent parolles, fors tant seullement de accoller & de baiser comme ceulx qui voulentiers le faisoyent."

We next hear of Gawain's recovery, and of the separation of the party of four above spoken of. Galiot takes Lancelot home with him to his own country, whilst the Lady of Mallehault remains for a time with the queen and Arthur. When Lancelot is next spoken of, he is in Galiot's country, where we will now leave him.

NOTES TO THE APPENDIX.

P. xxiii. *Descosse* = *d'Écosse*, of Scotland. In Old French, words are frequently run together; thus we have *labbaye* for *l'abbaye*, *sesmeurent* for *s'émeurent*, etc. Also the letter *s* is often replaced in modern French by an acute or circumflex accent; so that *Escosse* = *Écosse*; *chasteau* = *château*, etc. The word *si* often occurs below with a great variety of meanings, *viz.* I, he; and, also; so, thus; etc.

P. xxiv. *baille*, given, entrusted. *brouyr* (brûler), being burnt. *monstier*, monastery. *gauues*, so in the original throughout; *gaunes* is used in other romances.

P. xxv. *auecques* = *avec*, with.

P. xxvi. *aduision*, vision. *behourdys*, tournament. *naure*, wounded. *deffera* = *desferra*, un-ironed; it means that Lancelot drew the weapons out of the knight's wounds. *deuers*, "Préposition relative au temps et au lieu dont on parle; près, vers, contre, proche; de *versus*." Roquefort. *octroya*, permitted (authorized). *mouille*, *lit.* wetted; insulted.

P. xxvii. *veirent*, saw. *escript* (*écrit*), written. *lassemblee*, the gathering; *i.e.* the war, strife. *rua*, overthrew.

P. xxviii. *mire*, physician. *gue*, ford, pass. *tresues*, a truce; spelt *treues* on p. xxix.

P. xxix. *esbatre*, to divert oneself. In modern French, *s'ébattre*.

P. xxx. *orrions*, shall hear. *deust* = *dût*. *cheoient*, from *cheoir*, to fall. Compare *chûte*. *poilz*, hairs. *esbahy*, amazed. *ortelz*, toes. *chaille*; from *chaloir*, to be anxious about. *dilacion*, delay.

P. xxxi. *paour*, fear. *mire*, physician. *veufue*, old.

P. xxxii. *cheuauche*, rides. *boutte*, buts, pushes. *iccte* (*jeté*), cast. *cuyde*, I believe. *Si maist dieu*, so God aid me. Here *maist* is put for *m'aist*. *oncques*, ever. *ennuyt*, this night, to-night. *lottroyera*, will grant him his request. *conroy*, troops.

P. xxxiii. *derrains* (*derniers*), last. *busines*, trumpets. *Or y perra*, now it will appear. *cuidoit*, believed; from the old verb *quider*. *cheuauchent*, ride. *ia*, already. *tertre*, a small hill.

P. xxxiv. *adresse*, a cross-path. *huy*, just before; *lit.* this day. Lat. *hodiè*. *se pasme*, swoons. *leans*, thither.

P. xxxv. *ores*, now. *huy*, to-day. *preudhomme*, a wise and prudent man. *lottroye*, permits him. *tref*, tent. *nenny*, no! *ains*, before. *guerpiront*, will leave. *deduys*, amusements, diversions.

P. xxxvi. *leans*, there. *gerrez*, will lie. *las*, tired. *Ains*, but.

P. xxxvii. *semondray*, shall ask. *esbahy*, amazed. *tollez*, take away. *creanca*, promised. *lees*, wide, full. *lices*, lists.

P. xxxviii. *emmy le pas*, in the midst of the passage. *hucher*, to cry aloud.

P. xxxix. *lieue*, lifts. *saisine*, disposal. *enseignes*, tokens. *aincoys*, first of all.

P. xl. *oncques mes*, never. *a resiouyr* (*réjouir*), in amusing. *escondiroye*, will refuse. *me poyse*, it troubles me. *pieca*, long ago. *se embronche*, covers his face.

P. xli. *sen esueillerent*, awoke thereat. *Adonc*, then. *riens forfait*, anyway injured.

P. xlii. *ne me mescreez mye que*, do not doubt me more than.

P. xliii. *doint*, gives, were to give.

P. xliv. *mesgnie*, properly the *suite* or household of a prince; see Roquefort s. v. *magnie* and *maignee*. *nef*, a boat. *loue*, advise.

P. xlv. *vous esmayez*, afflict yourself. *courrouce*, wroth, displeased.

P. xlvi. *vergier*, orchard. *aual*, below. *se embroncha*, she veiled herself, or, hid herself. *iouxte*, beside.

P. xlvii. *maintes*, many. *ot*, heard. *len prise mieulx*, esteemed it better. *loe*, praises. *deffera*, dis-ironed, drew the weapons out of. *lestrief*, the stirrup.

P. xlviii. *leans* (*la dédans*), there. *belif*. We find in Cotgrave's French Dictionary, "*Belic*, a kind of red or geueles, in Blazon." *enseignes*, tokens, message.

P. xlix. *mestier*, serviceable. *dillec*, thence. *pourneant*, for nothing, in vain. *voire*, truly. *commanday a dieu*, commended to God, bade farewell.

P. li. *mestier en est*, there is need of it. *greigneur bien*, exceedingly well, very highly.

P. lii. *greigneure*, greater. *anuytoit*, became night. *ie me doibz pener*, I ought to take pains.

P. liii. *ouen*, this year.

The Romans of Lancelot of the Laik.

[PROLOGUE.]

THe ſoft morow ande The luſtee Aperill, [Fol. 1.]
The wynter ſet, the ſtormys in exill,
Quhen that the brycht *and* freſch illumynare
Upriſith arly in his fyre chare
His hot courſ in to the orient,
And frome his ſpere his goldine ſtremis sent
Wpone the grond, in maner off meſag,
One euery thing to valkyne thar curage,
That natur haith set wnder hire mycht,
Boith gyrſ, and flour, *and* euery luſty vicht:
And namly thame that felith the aſſay
Of luſe, to ſchew the kalendis of may,
Throw birdis ſonge with opine wox one hy,
That ſeſſit not one lufaris for to cry,
Leſt thai forȝhet, throw ſlewth of Ignorans,
The old wſage of lowis obſeruans.
And frome I can the bricht face aſſpy,
It deuit me no langare fore to ly,

In April, when the fresh luminary upriseth,

and sendeth from his sphere his golden streams,

and when I espy his bright face,

Nore that loue schuld ſleuth In to me finde,
I walk forth, bewailing my sad life. Bot walkine furth, bewalinge in my mynde
The dredful lyve endurit al to longe,
Sufferans in loue of forouful harmys ſtronge,
The ſcharpe dais and the hewy ȝerys,
Quhill phebus thris haith paſſith al his ſperis,
Vithoutine hope ore traiſtinge of comfort;
So be such meine fatit was my sort.
Thus in my ſaull Rolinge al my wo,
The sword of love carves my heart. My carful hart carwing cañ In two
The derdful fuerd of lowis hot diffire;
So be the morow set I was a-fyre
In felinge of the acceſ hot *and* colde,
That haith my hart in ſich a fevir holde,
Only to me thare was noñe vthir eſ
Bot thinkine qhow I ſchulde my lady pleſ.
The ſcharp affay and ek the Inwart peine
Of dowblit wo me neulyng*is* cañ conſtrein,
Quhen that I have remembrit one my tho*cht*
My lady knoweth not how I am wo-begone. How sche, quhois bewte al my harm̄ haith wrocht,
[Fol. 1 *b*.] Ne knouith not how I ame wo begoñe,
Nor how that I ame of hire ſ*er*uand*is* oñe;
And in my ſelf I cañ nocht fynde the meyne
In to quhat wyſ I ſal my wo compleine.
I walked thus in the field, and came to a well-beseen garden. Thus in the feild I walkith to *and* froo,
As tho*cht*ful wicht that felt of no*cht* bot woo,
Syne to o gardinge, that weſ weil beſeñ,
Of quiche the feild was al depaynt *with* greñ.
The tendyre and the luſty flour*is* new
Up thröue the greñ vpone thar ſtalk*is* grew
Aȝhane the ſone, and thare levis ſpred,
Quharw*ith* that al the gardinge was I-clede;
That pryapus, in to his tyme before,
In o luſtear walkith nevir more;
It was closely environed with leaves. And al about enweronyt and Icloſit
One ſich o wyſ, that none w*ith*in ſuppoſit

Fore to be ſeñ *with* ony vicht thare owt ;
So dide the levis cloſ it[1] all about.
Thar was the flour, thar was the queñ alpheſt,[2]
Ry*cht* wering being of the ny*chtis* reſt,
Wncloſ*ing* gañe the crownel for the day ;
The bry*cht* ſone illumynit haith the ſpray,
The ny*chtis* ſobir ande the moſt ſchowr*is*,
As criſtoll terys *with*hong vpone the flour*is*,
Haith vpwarpith In the luſty aire,
The morow makith ſoft, ameyne, and faire ;
And the byrd*is* thar my*ch*ty voce out-throng,
Quhill al the wood reſonite of thar ſonge,
That gret confort till ony vicht It wer
That pleſſith thame of luſtenes to here.
Bot gladneſ ſ til the tho*ch*tful, eu*er* mo
The more he ſeith, the more he haith of wo.
Thar was the garding *with* the flour*is* ourſret,
Quich is in poſy fore my lady set,
That hire Repreſent to me oft befor,
And thane alſo ; thus al day gan be ſor[3]
Of tho*cht* my goſt *with* torment occupy,
That I becam̃e In to one exaſy,
Ore ſlep, or how I wot ; bot ſo befell
My wo haith done my livis goſt expell,
And in ſich wiſ ſ weil long I can endwr,
So me betid o wondir aventur.
As I thus lay, Ry*cht* to my ſpreit vas ſeñ
A birde, yat was as ony lawrare greñ,
A-licht, and ſayth in to hir bird*is* chere ;
" O woful wrech, that levis in to were !
To ſchew the thus the god of loue me ſent,
That of thi ſer*u*ice no thing is content,
For in his court yhoue lewith *in* diſſpar,
And vilfully ſuſtenis al thi care,

56 60 64 68 72 76 80 84 88

The sun illumined the sprays ;

the birds sang till the woods resounded ;

the garden was adorned with flowers.

[Fol. 2.]
I fell there into an ecstasy or sleep,

and saw in my dream a green bird, who said :

"The God of Love is discontent with thee.

[1] MS. "cloſit."
[2] May we read "alcest" ?
[3] MS. "befor."

And ſchapith no thinge of thine awn remede,
Bot clepith ay and cryith apone dede.
Yhow callith the bird*is* be morow fro thar bour*is*,
Yhoue devith boith the erbis and the flour*is*, 92
And clepit hyme vnfaithful king of lowe,
Yow dewith hyme in to h*is* rigne abuſe,
Yhow tempith hyme, yhoue doith thi ſelf no gud,

You are destitute of wit.

Yhoue are o moñ of wit al deſtitude. 96
Wot yhoue no*ch*t that al liwis creatwre
Haith of thi wo i*n* to h*is* hand the cwre?

Though you call on trees, your lady hears not.

And ſet yhoue clep one erbis and one treis,
Sche her*is* not thi wo, nore ȝhit ſche ſeis; 100
For none may know the dirkneſ of thi tho*ch*t,
Ne blamyth he*r* thi wo ſche knowith no*ch*t.
And It is weil accordinge It be ſo
He ſuffir harme, that to redreſ h*is* wo 104
Previdith not; for long ore he be ſonde,
Holl of his leich, that ſchewith not h*is* vound.

Ovid says it is better to shew, than to conceal love.

And of owid ye autor ſchall yhow knaw
Of luſe that ſeith, for to conſel or ſchow, 108
The laſt he clepith althir-beſt of two;
And that is ſuth, and ſal be eue*r* mo.
And loue alſo haith chargit me to ſay,

[Fol. 2 b.]

Set yhoue preſume, ore beleif, ye aſſay 112
Of his fe*r*uice, as It wil ryne ore go,
Preſwme It not, fore It wil not be so;
Al magre thine a fe*r*uand ſchal yow bee.

As touching thine adversity, seek the remedy."

And as tueching thine adue*r*ſytee, 116
Complen and sek of the rameđ, the cwre,
Ore, gif yhow likith, furth thi wo endure."
And, as me tho*ch*t, I anſuerde aȝaiñe

Then answered I:

Thus to the byrde, in word*is* ſchort and plane: 120
"It ganyth not, as I have harde Recorde,
The fe*r*uand for to diſput wi*th* ye lord;

"Love knows the reason of my wo."

Bot well he knowith of al my vo the quhy,
And in quhat wyſ he hath me ſet, quhar I 124

Nore may I not, nore can I not attane,
Nore to hir hienes dare I not complane."
"Ful!" quod the bird, "lat be thi nyß diſpare, "Fool," said the bird, "despair
For in this erith no lady is ſo fare, not;
So hie eſtat, nore of ſo gret empriß,
That in hire ſelf haith viſdome ore gentrice,
Yf that o wicht, that worthy is to be
Of lovis court, ſchew til hir that he
Seruith hire in lovis hartly wyß,
That ſchall thar for hyme hating or diſpiß.
The god of love thus chargit the, at ſchort, the God of Love charges thee to
That to thi lady yhoue thi wo Report; speak out your
Yf yhoue may not, thi plant ſchall yhov vrit. love, or else to write thy plaint;
Se, as yhoue cane, be maner oft endit
In metir, quhich that no man haith ſuſſpek,
Set oft tyme thai contenyng gret effecc;
Thus one ſume wyß yhow ſchal thi wo dwclar.
And, for thir ſedulis and thir billis are
So generall, and ek ſo ſchort at lyte,
And ſwme of thaim is loſt the appetit,
Sum trety ſchall yhoue for yi lady ſak, write, then, some
That wnkouth is, als tak one hand and mak, treatise for her to read;
Of love, ore armys, or of ſum othir thing,
That may hir one to thi Remembryng brynge; [Fol. 3.]
Qwich foundith Not one to no hewynes,
Bot one to gladneß and to luſteneß,
That yhoue belevis may thi lady pleß, one that may please her and
To have hir thonk and be one to hir eß; get her thanks.
That ſche may wit in ſeruice yhow art one.
Faire weil," quod ſche, "thus ſchal yhow the diſpone, Farewell, and be merry."
And mak thi ſelf als mery as yhoue may,
It helpith not thus fore to wex al way."
With that, the bird ſche haith hir leif tak,
For fere of quich I can onone to wak; Thereon I awoke,
Sche was ago, and to my ſelf thocht I and wondered what it might
Quhat may yis meyne? quhat may this ſignify? mean.

Is It of troucht, or of Illuſioune ?
Bot finaly, as in concluſioune,
Be as be may, I ſchal me not discharge,
Sen It apperith be of lovis charg ;
And ek myne hart noñe othir biſſynes
Haith bot my ladice ſeruice, as I geß ;
I determined to take in hand this occupation. Among al vtheris I ſchal one honde tak
This litil occupatioune for hire ſak.
Bot hyme I pray, the mychty gode of loue,
That ſitith hie in to his ſpir abuf,
(At command of o wyß quhois viſioune
My goſt haith takin this opvnioune,)
That my lawboure may to my lady pleß
And do wnto hir ladeſchip ſum eß,
So that my trauell be nocht tynt, and I
Quhat vtheris ſay ſetith nothing by.
I know it will but hurt my name, when men hear my feeble negligence. For wel I know that, be this worldis famẽ,
It ſchal not be bot hurting to my namẽ,
Quhen that thai here my febil negligens,
That empit is, and bare of eloquens,
Of diſcreſſioune, and ek of Retoryk ;
The metire and the cuning both elyk
So fere diſcording frome perfeccioune ;
I submit my poem to the correction of the wise; Quhilk I ſubmyt to the correccioune
Of yaim the quhich that is diſcret and wyß,
And enterit is of loue in the ſeruice ;
[Fol. 3 b.] Quhich knouyth that no lovare dare withſtonde,
Quhat loue hyme chargit he mot tak one honde,
Deith, or defamẽ, or ony maner wo ;
And at this tyme with me It ſtant rycht ſo,
for I dare not oppose Love's command. As I that dar makine no demande
To quhat I wot It lykith loue commande.
Tueching his chargis, as with al deſtitut,
Within my mynd ſchortly I conclud
For to fulfyll, for ned I mot do ſo.
Thane in my thocht rolling to and fro

Quhare that I myȝct fum wnkouth mater fynde,
Quhill at ye laſt it fell in to my mynd
Of o ſtory, that I befor had ſene,
That boith of loue and armys can conteñ,
Was of o knycȝt clepit lancelot of ye laik,
The ſone of bane was, king of albanak;
Of quhois fame *and* worſchipful dedis
Clerkis in to diuerſ bukis redis,
Of quhome I thynk her fum thing for to writ
At louis charge, and as I cane, endit;
Set men tharin ſal by experiens
Know my conſait, and al my negligens.
Bot for that ſtory is ſo paſing larg,
One to my wit It war ſo gret o charg
For to tranſlait the romans of that knycȝt;
It paſſith fare my cunyng and my mycht,
Myne Ignorans may It not comprehende;
Quharfor thare one I wil me not depend
How he was borne, nor how his fader deid
And ek his moder, nore how he was denyed
Efter thare deth, preſumyng he was ded,
Of al ye lond, nore how he fra that ſtede
In ſacret wyſ wnwyſt away was tak,
And nwriſt with ye lady of ye lak.
Nor, in his ȝouth, think I not to tell
The auentouris, quhich to hyme befell;
Nor how the lady of the laik hyme had
One to the court, quhare that he knycȝt was mad;
None wiſt his nome, nore how that he was tak
By loue, and was Iwondit to the ſtak,
And throuch *and* throuch perſit to ye hart,
That al his tyme he couth It not aſtart;
For thare of loue he enterit in ſeruice,
Of wanore throuch the beute and franchis,
Throuch quhois ſeruice in armys he has vrocht
Mony wonderis, and perellis he has ſocht.

At last I thought of the story of "Lancelot of the Lake,"

of whom I here think to write something.

But because my ignorance cannot comprehend the French romance,

I shall net tell how he was born;

nor how he was nourished by the Lady of the Lake;

nor how he was brought to Arthur's court,

[Fol. 4.]

and pierced to the heart by the beauty of Wanore (Guinevere),

for whose service he wrought many wonders;

Nor how he thor, in to his ȝoung curage,
nor how he made a vow to revenge a wounded knight,
Hath maid awoue, and in to louis rage,
In the rewenging of o wondit knyc*h*t
That cu*m*yne was in to the court that nyc*h*t;
who had a broken sword in his head, and a truncheon of a broken spear in his body;
In to his hed a brokin[1] fuerd had he,
And in his body alfo myc*h*t me*n* see
The tronfione of o brokine fper that was,
Quhich no ma*n* out dedenyt to aras;
Nor how he haith the wapnis out tak,
And his awow apone this wis can mak,
That he fchuld hyme Reweng at h*is* poware
One eue*r*y knyc*h*t that louith the hurtare
Bette*r* thane hyme, the quhich that vas Iwond.
Throw quich awoue in armys hath ben founde
a vow which caused the death of many a wight warrior;
The deth of mo*n*y wereoure ful wicht;[2]
For, fro tho wow was knowing of the knyc*h*t,
Thare was ful mony o pafage in the londe
By me*n* of armys kepit to withftond
This knyc*h*t, of quhome thai ben al set afyre
Thai*m* to reweng in armys of defir.
or how he and Sir Kay were sent to defend the lady of Nohalt;
Nor how that thane in*con*tyne*n*t was fend
He and f*ir* kay togidde*r* to defend
The lady of nohalt, nor how that hee
Gou*er*nit hyme thare, nore in quhat degre.
Nor how the gret pafing vaffolag
He efcheuit, thrōue the outragouſ curag,
or how he conquered the Sorrowful Castle;
In conquiryng of the sorowful caftell.
Nor how he paffith doun*e* in the cauis fell,
And furth ye keys of Inchantme*n*t broc*h*t,
That al diftroyt quhich that thare vas vroc*h*t.
[Fol. 4 *b*.] or how he rescued Sir Gawane and his nine fellows;
Nore howe that he refkewit f*ir* gawane,
W*ith* h*is* ix falouſ in to prefone tane;
Nore mony vthere diue*r*ſ aduenture,
Quhich to report I tak not in my cwre,

[1] MS. "abrokin."
[2] The MS. wrongly transposes ll. 247 and 248.

Nor mony aſſemblay that gawane gart be maid
To wit h*is* name; nor how that he hyme hade
Wnwiſt, and hath the worſchip *and* empriſ;
Nor of the kny*cht*is in to mony[1] diuerſ wyſ
Throuch his awoue that hath thare dethis found;
Nor of the ſufferans that by louis wounde
He in his trawel ſufferith auer more;
Nor in the quenis *pres*ens how tharfor
By camelot, in to that gret Revare,
He was ner dround. I wil It not declare
How that he was in louis hewy thocht
By dagenet in to the court I-brocht;
Nor how the knycht that tyme he cane perſew,
Nor of the gyantis by camelot he ſlew;
Nor wil I not her tell the maner how
He ſlew o knycht, by natur of his wow,
Off melyholt; nore how in to that toune
Thar came one hyme o gret confuſione
Of pupil *and* [of] knychtis, al enarmyt,
Nor how he thar haith kepit hyme wnharmyt;
Nor of his worſchip, nor of his gret prowes,
Nor his defens of armys in the pres.
Nor how the lady of melyhalt yat ſche
Came to the feild, and pray[i]th hyme that he
As to o lady to hir[2] his ſuerd hath ȝold,
Nor how he was in to hir keping hold;
And mony vthir nobil deid alſo
I wil report quharfor I lat ourgo.
For quho thaim lykith for to ſpecyfy,
Of one of thaim mycht mak o gret ſtory;
Nor thing I not of his hye renōwn
My febil wit to makin menſioune;
Bot of the weris that was ſcharp *and* ſtrong,
Richt perellouſ, and hath enduryt long,

nor of the many "assemblies" Gawane held to find out his name;
nor of his suffering caused by love's wound;
nor how he was nearly drowned at Camelot;
nor how he was brought to court by Dagenet;
nor of the giants he slew at Camelot;
nor how he slew a knight of Melyholt;
and there defended himself against a crowd;
whereupon the lady of Melyhalt prayed him to yield his sword to her; and kept him in her power.
Whoever likes, might make of these things a long story.
But I think to tell of the wars between Arthur and Galiot;

[1] We should perhaps omit "mony." [2] MS. "his."

[Fol. 5.]

Of Arthur In defending of his lond,
Frome galiot, fone of the fair gyonde,
That brocht of knychtis o paſing confluens;

wherein Lancelot won renown by his defence of Arthur;

And how lancelot of arthuris hol defens
And of the veris berith the renownē;
And how he be the wais of fortoune

and at last made peace between the two princes.

Tuex the two princis makith the accorde,
Of al there mortall weris to concorde;

I shall also tell how Venus rewarded him.

And how that venus, ſiting hie abuf,
Reuardith hyme of trauell in to loue,
And makith hyme his ladice grace to have,
And thankfully his ſeruice cane reſave;
This is the mater quhich I think to tell.
Bot ſtil he mot rycht with the lady duell,
Quhill tyme cum eft that we ſchal of hym ſpek.

My summary must end for the present.

This proceſ [now] mot cloſine beñ and ſtek;
And furth I wil one to my mater go.

But I pray for the support of a very great poet,

Bot first I pray, and I beſek also,
One to the moſt conpilour to fupport,
Flour of poyetis, quhois nome I wil report
To me nor to noñ vthir It accordit,

whose name I may not mention;

In to our rymyng his naṁ to be recordit;
For ſum ſuld deme It of preſumpſioune,

for our riming is but derision, when his excellence is remembered.

And ek our rymyng is al bot deryſioune,
Quhen that remembrit is his excellens,
So hie abuf that ſtant in reuerans.
Ye freſch enditing of his laiting toung

The world knows his eloquence in inditing Latin;

Out throuch yis world ſo wid is yroung,
Of eloquens, and ek of retoryk;
Nor is, nor was, nore neuer beith hyme lyk,

and none can ever gladden the world like him:

This world gladith of his ſuet poetry.
His ſaul I blyſ conferuyt be for-thy;

to him be the thanks for my success.

And yf that ony lusty terme I wryt
He haith the thonk yerof, *and* this endit.

EXPLICIT PROLOGUS, ET INCIPIT PRIMUS LIBER.

[BOOK I.]

Quhen [that] tytan, withe his lusty heit, [Fol. 5 b.]
Twenty dais In to the aryeit
Haith maid his courſ, and all with diuerſ hewis
Aparalit haith the feldis and the bewis;
The birdis amyd the erbis *and* the flouris,
And one the branchis, makyne gone thar bouris,
And be the morow ſinging in ther chere
Welcum the luſty ſeſſone of the ȝere.
In to this tyme the worthi conqueroure
Arthure, wich had of al this worlde the floure
Of cheuelry auerding to his crown,
So paſing war his knychtis in renoune,
Was at carlill; and hapynnit ſo that hee
Soiornyt well long in that faire cuntree.
In to whilk tyme In to the court thai heire
None awenture, for wich the knyghtis weire
Anoit all at the abiding thare.
For-why, beholding one the ſobir ayre
And of the tyme the paſing luſtynes,
Can ſo thir knyghtly hartis to encreſ,
That thei ſhir kay one to the king haith ſende,
Beſeiching hyme he wold wichſaif to wende
To camelot the Cetee, whare that thei
Ware wont to heryng of armys day be day.
The king forſuth, heryng thare entent,
To thare deſir, be ſchort awyſment,
Ygrantid haith; and ſo the king proponit
And for to pas hyme one[1] the morne diſponit.
Bot ſo befell hyme [on] that nycht to meit
An aperans, the wich one to his ſpreit

When Titan, being in Aries, had apparelled the fields,

and birds began to make their bowers;

king Arthur was at Carlisle.

His knights, hearing of no adventure, were annoyed.

They therefore sent Sir Kay to pray the king to go to Camelot.

The king proposed to do so on the morrow.

[1] MS. "to pas one hyme one," with first "one" lightly crossed out.

That night he dreamt that his hair all fell off;

It femyth that of al his hed ye hore
Of fallith and maid defolat; wharfore
The king therof was pensyve in his mynd,
That al the day he couth no refting fynde,

which made him delay his journey.

Wich makith hyme his Iorneye to delaye.
And fo befell apone the thrid day,
The bricht fone, paſing in the weſt,
Haith maid his courſ, and al thing goith to Reſt;

Again he dreamt, that his bowels fell out, and lay beside him.

[Fol. 6.]

The king, fo as the ſtory can dewyſ,
He thoght aȝeine, apone the ſamyne wyſ,
His vombe out fallith vith his hoil syde
Apone the ground, *and* liging hyme beſid;
Throw wich anon out of his ſlep he ſtert,
Abaſit and adred in to his hart.

He told the queen, who answered, "No man should respect vain dreams."

The wich be morow one to the qwen he told,
And ſhe aȝeine to hyme haith anſuer ȝolde;
"To dremys, *ſir*, ſhuld no man have Reſpek,
For thei ben thing*is* weyn, of non affek."
"Well," q*uo*d the king, "god grant It ſo befall!"

The king next shewed his dream to a clerk,

Arly he roſ, and gert one to hyme call
O clerk, to whome that al his hewynes
Tweching his drem ſhewith he expreſ,

who said, "Sir, such things testify nothing."

Wich anſuer yaf and ſeith one to the kinge;
"Shir, no Record lyith to ſuch thing;
Wharfor now, ſhir, I praye yow tak no kep,
Nore traiſt in to the vanyteis of slep;
For thei are thing*is* that afkith no credens,
But cauſith of ſum maner influe*ns*,
Empriſ of thoght, ore ſuper*fleuytee*,
Or than ſum othir caſualytee."

"Yet," replied he, "I shall not leave it so."

"ȝit," q*uo*d the king, "I ſal no*cht* leif It so;"
And furth he chargit meſingeri*s* to go
Throgh al his Realm, w*ith*outen more demande,

He bade all the bishops and clergy come to Camelot within twenty days.

And bad them ſtratly at thei ſhulde comande
All the biſhopes, and makyng no delay
The ſhuld appere be the tuenty day

At camelot, with al thar hol clergy
That moſt expert war, for to certefye
A mat*er* tueching to his goſt be nyght;
The meſag goith furth with the l*ett*res Right.
The king eft ſone, w*ith*in a litill ſpace,
His Iornay makith haith frome place to place,
Whill that he cam to camelot; and there
The clerk*is* all, as that the chargit were,
Aſſemblit war, and came to his preſens,
Of his deſir to viting the ſentens.
To them that war to hyme moſt ſpeciall
Furth his entent ſhauyth he al hall;
By whois conſeil, of the worthieſt
He cheſith ten, yclepit for the beſt,
And moſt expert and wiſeſt was ſuppoſit,
To qwhome his drem all hail he haith diſcloſſit;
The houre, the nyght, and al the c*er*cumſtans;
Beſichyne them that the ſignifycans
Thei wald hyme ſhaw, that he my*cht* reſting fynde
Of It, the wich that occupeid his mynde.
And one of them with[1] al ther holl affent
Saith, "ſhire, fore to declare our entent
Vpone this matere, ye wil ws delay
Fore to awyſing one to the ix day."
The king ther-to grantith haith, bot hee
In to o place, that ſtrong was and hye,
He cloſith them, whare thei may no whare get,
Vn to the day, the wich he to them set.
Than goith the clerk*is* ſadly to awyſ
Of this mat*er*, to ſeing in what wyſ
The king*is* drem thei ſhal beſt ſpecefy.
And than the maiſtris of aſtronomy
The book*is* longyne to ther artis set;[2]
Not was the buk*is* of arachell forget,

He goes to Camelot, and finds the clerks assembled.

He discloses all to the ten that are most expert,

[Fol. 6 *b*.]

and beseeches them to explain the dreams.

One of them asks for nine days to advise upon the matter.

The king complies, but shuts them up in a strong place.

The masters of astronomy fetch their books,

[1] MS. "saith with" (with a very slight scratch through "saith"). [2] So in MS. Read "fet."

Of nembrot, of danȝhelome, thei two,
Of moyſes, *and* of herynes all soo;
and calculate the disposition of the planets.
And ſeking be ther calcolacioun*e*
To fynd the planet*is* diſpoſicioun*e*,
The wich thei fond ware wond*er* ewill yſet
The ſamyne nyght the king his ſweuen met.
So ner the point ſocht thei have the thing,
They found the matter heavy for the king, and doubted if they should tell him so.
Thei fond It wond*er* hewy to the king,
Of wich thing thei waryng in to were
To ſhew the king, for dreid of his danger.
Of ane accorde thei planly haue p*ro*ponit
No worde to ſhow, and ſo thei them diſponit.
Being sent for,
The day is cu*m*yng, and he haith fore them ſent,
Beſichyne them to ſhewing ther entent.
they all spake, "Sir, we can find no evidence."
Than ſpak they all, and that of an accorde;
"Shir, of this thing we can no thing Recorde,
For we can noght fynd in til our ſciens
Tweching this mater ony ewydens."
"Ere we part," quoth the king, "ye shall witness something."
"Now," q*uo*d the king, "and be the glorius lorde,
Or we depart ye ſhall ſum thing recorde;
So pas yhe not, nor ſo It ſall not bee."
"Than," q*uo*d the clerk*is*, "grant ws dais three."
[Fol. 7.]
He grants them three days more.
The wich he grantid them, and but delay,
The term paſſith, no thing wold the ſay,
Wharof the king ſtondith heuy cherith,
And to the clerk*is* his viſag ſo apperith,
That all thei dred them of the king*is* myght.
They pray for a further delay of three days.
Than ſaith o clerk, "*sir*, as the thrid nyght
Ye dremyt, ſo [now] giffis ws delay
The thrid tyme, and to the thrid day."
By whilk tyme thei fundyng haith the ende
Of this mater, als far as ſhal depend
To ther ſciens; yit can thei not awyſ
To ſchewing to the king be ony wyſ.
They still refuse to declare their thought.
The day is cum, the king haith them befocht,
But one no wyſ thei wald declar ther thoght;

Than was he wroth in to his ſelf and noyt,
And maid his wow that thei ſhal[1] ben diſtroyt. 472 The king vows to destroy them;
His baronis he commandit to gar tak
Fyve of them one to the fir-ſtak,
And vther fyue be to the gibbot tone;
And the furth with the kingis charg ar gone. 476
He bad them in to ſecret wyſ that thei but secretly charges his knights not to harm them.
Shud do no harm, but only them aſſey.
The clarkis, dredful of the kingis Ire,
And ſaw the perell of deth and of the fyre, 480
Fyve, as thei can, has grantit to record;
That vther herde and ben of ther accorde;
And al thei ben yled one to the king,
And ſhew hyme thus as tueching of this thing. 484 They yield at last, and say,
"Shir, ſen that we conſtrenyt ar by myght
To ſhaw that wich[2] we knaw no thing aricht;
For thing to cum preſeruith It allan
To hyme the wich is euery thing certañ, 488
Excep the thing that til our knawleg hee
Hath ordynat of certan for to bee;
Therfor, ſhir king, we your magnificens
Beſeich It turne till ws to non offens, 492
Nor hald was nocht as learis, thoght It fall "Hold us not as liars, though it happen not as we say.
Not in this mater, as that we telen ſhall."
And that the king haith grantit them, *and* thei
Has chargit one, that one this wiſ ſall feye. 496
"Preſumyth, ſhir, that we have fundyne so;
All erdly honore ye nedis[3] moſt for-go, You must forego all earthly honour;
And them the wich ye moſt affy in-tyll [Fol. 7 b.]
Shal failye 3ow, magre of ther will; 500 and those on whom you most rely, will fail you."
And thus we haue in to this matere founde."
The king, quhois hart was al wyth dred ybownd,
And aſkit at the clerkis, if thei fynde
By there clergy, that ſtant in ony kynde 504

[1] MS. "ſhat." [2] MS. "wich that."
[3] MS. "nedift;" but see l. 518.

The king asks if his destiny can be altered.

Of poſſibilitee, fore to reforme
His deſteny, that ſtud in ſuch a forme;
If in the hewyne Is preordynat
On ſuch o wiſ his honor to tranſlat.
The clerk*is* ſaith, "forſuth, and we haue ſene

They reply, that the matter is dark.

O thing whar-of, if we the trouth ſhal meñ,
Is ſo obſcure and dyrk til our clergye,
That we wat not what It ſhal ſignefye,
Wich cauſith ws we can It not furth ſay."
"Yis," q*uo*d the king, "as lykith yow ye may,
For wers than this can nat be ſaid for me."

A master says, there is no help but in the true watery lion, and in the leech, and in the flower.

Thane ſaith o maiſtir, "than ſuthly th*us* finde we;
Thar is no thing ſal ſucour nor reſkew,
Your worldly honore nedis moſt adew,
But throuch the watrye lyone *and* ek fyne,
On throuch the liche *and* ek the wattir ſyne,

God knows what this should mean.

And throuch the conſeill of the flour; god wot
What this ſhude meñ, for mor ther-of we not."
No word the king anſuerid ayane,
For al this reſone thinkith bot *in* weyne.

The king shews no outward grief,

He ſhawith outwart his contenans
As he therof takith no greuans;

but is not rid of anxiety all night.

But al the nyght it paſſid nat his thoght.
The dais courſ *with* ful deſir he ſocht,
And furth he goith to bring his mynd *in* reſt

Next day he goes to the forest.

With mony O knyght vn to the gret foreſt;
The rachis gon wn-copelit for the deire,
That in the wodis makith nois *and* cheir:
The knycht*is*, *with* the grewhund*is* in aweit,
Secith boith the planis and the ſtreit.

The chase.

Doune goith the hart, doune goith the hynd alſo;
[In to the feld can ruſching to and fro][1]
The ſwift grewhund, hardy of aſſay;
Befor ther hedis no thing goith away.

[1] A line must here be lost, but there is nothing to shew this in the MS. The inserted line is imitated from l. 3293.

The king of hunting takith haith his ſport,
And to his palace home he can Refort,
Ayan the noon; and as that he was set
Vith all his noble knyght*is* at the met,
So cam ther in an agit knyght, *and* hee
Of gret eſſtat ſemyt for to bee;
Anarmyt all, as tho It was the gyſs,
And thus the king he ſaluſt, one this wiſs,
"Shir king, one to yow am y ſende
Frome the worthieſt that *in* world is kend,
That leuyth now of his tyme and age,
Of manhed, wiſdome, *and* of hie curag,
Galiot, ſone of the fare gyande;
And thus, at ſhort, he bid*is* yow your londe
Ye yald hyme our, *with*out Impedyment;
Or of hyme holde, and if tribut and rent.
This is my charge at ſhort, whilk if youe left
For to fulfill, of al he haith conqueſt
He ſais that he moſt tendir ſhal youe hald."
By ſhort awys the king his anſuer yald;
"Shir kny*ch*t, your lorde wondir hie pretendis,
When he to me ſic ſalutatioune send*is*;
For I as yit, in tymys that ar gone,
Held neu*er* lond excep of god alone,
Nore neu*er* thinkith til erthly lord to yef
Trybut nor rent, als long as I may lef."
"Well," q*uo*d the kny*ch*t, "ful for repentith me;
Non may reciſt the thing the wich mone bee.
To yow, ſ*ir* king, than frome my lord am I
With diffyans ſent, and be this reſone why;
His purpos Is, or this day moneth day,
With all his oſt, planly to aſſay
Your lond, *with* mony m̄nly man of were,
And helmyt kny*ch*t*is*, boith with ſheld *and* ſpere;
And neu*er* thinkith to retwrn home whill
That he this lond haith conqueſt at his will;

[Fol. 8.]
As they sit at meat, an aged knight enters, fully armed.

The king returns.

The knight's message is that king Galiot bids Arthur to yield to him his kingdom.

The king refuses.

The knight replies, that his lord bids him defiance, and will invade his land in a month;

not to return till he has conquered;

and he intends to possess queen Vanour.

And ek vanour the quen, of whome that hee
Herith report of al this world that ſhee
In fairhed and in wertew doith excede,
He bad me ſay he think*is* to poſſede."

Arthur returns his defiance.

"Schir," q*uod* the king, "your meſag me behuf*is*
Of reſone and of curtaſy excuſ$^{\beta}$;
But tueching to your lord *and* to his oft,
His powar [and] his meſag and his boſt,
That pretendith my lond for to diſtroy,
Thar-of as ȝit tak I non anoye;

[Fol. 8 b.]

And ſay your lord one my behalf, when hee
Haith tone my lond, that al the world ſhal see
That It ſhal be magre myne entent."

The knight departs, lamenting Arthur's adventurous spirit.

With that the kny*cht*, wi*th*outen leif, is went,
And richt as he was paſing to the dure,
He ſaith, "a gode![1] what wykyt aduenture
Apperith!" wi*th* that his hors he nome,
Two knicht*is* kepit, waiting h*is* outcome.
The kni*cht* is gon, the king he gan Inquere
At gawan, and at other kny*cht*is sere,

Arthur asks Gawane who Galiot is.

If that thei knew or eu*er* hard recorde
Of galiot, and wharof he wes lorde;
And ther was non among his kny*cht*is all
Which anſuerd o word in to the hall.
Than galygantynis of walys raſe,

Galygantynis of Wales replies,

That trauelit in diu*er*ſ$^{\beta}$ lond*is* has,
In mony kny*cht*ly aue*n*tur haith ben;
And to the king he ſaith, "ſi*r*, I haue sen
Galiot, which is the fareſt kny*cht*,

that Galiot is the tallest knight by half a foot of all he ever saw; that he is wise, liberal, humble,

And hieſt be half a fut one hycht,
That eu*er* I saw, and ek his me*n* accordith;
Hyme lakid noc*ht* that to a lord recordith.
For viſare of his ag is non than hee,
And ful of larges and humylytee;

[1] MS. "agod^{e}."

An hart he haith of paſing hie curag, courageous, and
And is not xxiiij ȝer of age, under xxiv years of age.
And of his tyme mekil haith conquerit;
Ten kingis at his command ar ſterit. Ten kings obey him.
He with his men ſo louit is, y geſ,
That hyme to pleſ is al ther beſynes.
Not ſay I this, ſir, in to ye entent
That he, nor none wnder the firmament,
Shal pouere haue ayane your maieſtee;
And or thei ſhuld, this y ſey for mee,
Rather I ſhall knychtly in to feild
Reſaue my deith anarmyt wnder ſheld.
This ſpek y left;"—the king, ayan the morn,
Haith varnit huntaris baith with hund *and* horne, The king goes again to the chase.
And arly gan one to the foreſt ryd,
With mony manly knyghtis by his ſid,
Hyme for to ſport and comfort with the dere,
Set contrare was the ſeſone of ye yere.
His moſt huntyng was atte wyld bore; He likes boar-hunting best.
God wot a luſtye cuntree was It thoore, [Fol. 9.]
In the ilk tyme! weil long this noble king
In to this lond haith maid his ſuiornyng;
Frome the lady was send o meſinger A messenger comes from the lady of Melyhalt,
Of melyhalt, wich ſaith one this maner,
As that the ſtory ſhewith by recorde:
"TO yow, ſir king, as to hir ſoueran lorde,
My lady hath me chargit for to ſay
How that your lond ſtondith in affray;
For galiot, ſone of the fare gyande, to say that Galiot has entered Arthur's land,
Enterit Is by armys in your land,
And ſo the lond and cuntre he anoyth,
That quhar he goith planly he diſtroyth,
And makith al obeiſand to his honde,
That nocht is left wnconqueſt in that lond, and has conquered all but two castles belonging to his mistress.
Excep two caſtellis longing to hir cwre,
Wich to defend ſhe may nocht long endure.

Wharfor, *ſir*, in word*is* plan *and* ſhort,
Ye mon diſpone your folk for to ſupport."
The king promises not to delay, and inquires the number of the foe. "Wel," q*uod* the king, "one to thi lady ſay
The neid is myne, I fall It not delay;
But what folk ar thei ne*m*myt for to bee,
That in my lond is cu*m*yne in ſich degree?"
"A hundred thouſand," is the reply. "An hundreth thouſand boith vith ſheld *and* ſpere
On hors ar armyt, al redy for the were."
"Wel," q*uod* the king, "and but delay this ny*ch*t,
Or than to morn as that the day is lycht,
The king says he will set off that very night. I ſhal remuf; ther ſhal no thing me mak
Impedyme*n*t, my Iorney for to tak."
Than ſeith his kny*chtis* al *with* one aſſent,
His knights advise him to wait till he has raised an army. "Shir, that is al contrare our entent;
For to your folk this mater is wnwiſt,
And ye ar here our few for to reciſt
3one power, and youre cuntre to defende;
Tharfor abid, and for your folk ye send,
That lyk a king and lyk a weriour
Ye may ſuſten in armys your honoure."
"Now," q*uod* the king, "no langer that I 3eme
My crowne, my ſepture, nor my dyademe,
Frome that I here, ore frome I wnder*ſ*tand,
That ther by fors be entrit in my land
Men of armys, by ſtrenth of vyolens,
He refuses to wait longer than till the morrow. If that I mak abid or reſydens
In to o place langar than o ny*ch*t,
For to defend my cuntre *and* my ry*ch*t."
[Fol. 9 *b*.] The king that day his meſage haith furth ſent
Throuch al his realme, and ſyne to reſt is went.
Up goith the morow, wp goith the bry*ch*t day,
Wp goith the sone in to his freſh aray;
Richt as he ſpred his bemys frome northeſt,
The king arises next morning without delay, The king wpraſ *with*outen more areſt,
And by his awn conſeil and entent
His Iornaye tuk at ſhort awyſment.

And but dulay he goith frome place to place
Whill that he cam nere whare[1] the lady was,
And in one plane, apone o reuer ſyde,
He lichtit doune, and ther he can abide ;
And yit w*ith* hyme to batell fore to go
Vij thousand fechter*is* war thei, *and* no mo.
This was the lady, of qwhome befor I tolde,
That lancilot haith in to hir kepinge holde ;
But for to tell his paſing hewyneſſe,
His peyne, his ſorow, and his gret diſtreſſe
Of preſone and of loues gret ſuppris,
It war to long to me for to dewys.
When he reme*m*brith one his hewy charge
Of loue, wharof he can hyme not diſcharge,
He wepith and he ſorowith in his chere,
And euery nyght ſemyth hyme o yere.
Gret peite was the ſorow that he maad,
And to hyme-ſelf apone this wiſ he ſaade :

and reaches a plain by the river side,

having only seven thousand with him.

Lancelot, having been imprisoned by the lady of Melyhalt,

laments his fate.

"Qwhat haue y gilt, allace ! or qwhat defer*u*it ?
That thus myne hart ſhal vondit ben *and* carwit
One by the ſuord of double peine and wo ?
My comfort and my pleſans is ago,
To me is nat that ſhuld me glaid reſeruit.

Lancelot's lament ;

his pleasure is gone ;

I curſ the tyme of myne Natiuitee,
Whar in the heuen It ordinyd was for me,
In all my lyue neu*er* til haue eeſ ;
But for to be example of diſeſ,
And that apperith that eu*er*y vicht may see.

he curses his natal day ;

Sen thelke tyme that I had ſufficians
Of age, and chargit thoght*is* ſufferans,
Nor neu*er* I *con*tinewite haith o day
With-out the payne of thoght*is* hard aſſay ;
Thus goith my youth in tempeſt *and* penans.

he has never spent a single day free from anxiety,

[1] MS. "whare that," with slight scratch through "that."

and is now in prison; [Fol. 10.]

And now my body is In prefone broght;
But of my wo, that in Regard is noght,
The wich myne hart felith euer more.

and invokes Death.

O deth, allace! whi hath yow me forbore
That of remed haith the fo long befoght!"

Thus neuer*e*more he fefith to compleine,
This woful knyght that felith not bot peine;

Thus the smart of love's sorrow pricketh him.

So prekith hyme the fmert of loues fore,
And eu*er*y day encreffith more and more.
And with this lady takine is alfo,

He is kept by her from the exercise of knighthood;

And kepit whar he may no whare go
To haunt knychthed, the wich he moft defirit;
And, thus his hart *with* dowbil wo yfirite,

and there we let him dwell.

We lat hyme duel here with the lady ftill,
Whar he haith laifere for to compleine his fyll.

Meanwhile, Galiot besieged a castle.

And galiot in this meyne tyme he laie
By ftrong myght o caftell to affay,
With many engyne and diu*er*f wais fere,
For of fute folk he had a gret powere
That bowis bur, and vther Inftrument*is*,

His army had pavilions, tents, and iron-wheeled chariots.

And with them lede ther palȝonis *and* ther te*n*t*is*,
With mony o ftrong chariot and cher
With yrne qwhelis and barris long *and* fqwar;
Well ftuffit with al maner apparell
That longith to o fege or to batell;
Whar-with his oft was clofit al about,
That of no ftrenth nedith hyme to dout.

When he heard of Arthur's coming,

And when he hard the cu*m*yne of the king,
And of his oft, and of his gaderyng,
The wich he reput but of febil myght
Ayanis hyme for to fuften the ficht,
His confell holl affemblit he, but were,

he assembled his council,

Ten knight*is* with other lord*is* fere,
And told theme of the cu*m*ing of the king,
And afkit them there confell of that thing.

Hyme thoght that it his worſchip wold degrade,
If he hyme ſelf in *pro*pir *per*ſone raide
Enarmyt ayane ſo few menye
As It was told arthur[*is*] fore to bee ;
And thane the kyng-An-hund*er*eth-kny*chtis* cold,
(And ſo he hot, for neu*er*more he wolde
Ryd of his lond, but In his cu*m*pany
O hundyre knyght*is* ful of chiuellry).
He ſaith, "ſhir, ande I one hond [may] tak,
If It you pleſ, this Iorney ſhal I mak."
Quod galiot, "I grant It yow, but ye
Shal firſt go ryd, yone kny*chtis* oft *and* see."
With-outen more he ridith our the plan,
And ſaw the oft and is returnyd ayañ ;
And callit them mo than he hade ſen, for why
He dred the reprefe of his cumpany.
And to his lord apone this wys ſaith hee,
"Shir, ten thouſand y ges them for to bee."
And galiot haith chargit hyme to tak
Als fell folk, and for the feld hyme mak.
And ſo he doith and haith them wel Arayt ;
Apone the morne his banaris war diſplayt.
Up goth the trumpet*is* with the clariou*nis*,
Ayaine the feld blawen furth ther ſownis,
Furth goth this king *with* al his oft anon.
Be this the word wes to king arthur gone,
That knew no thing, nor wiſt of ther entent,
But ſone his folk ar one to armys went ;
But arthur by Report hard saye
How galiot non armys bur that day,
Wharfor he thoght of armys nor of ſheld
None wald he tak, nor mak hyme for the feld.
But gawane haith he clepit, was hyme by,
In qwhome Rignith the flour of cheuelry ;
And told one what man*er*, and one what wyſ
He ſhuld his batelles ordand and dewys ;

who thought it would degrade him, to fight in proper person against so few.

[Fol. 10 *b*.]
The king of a hundred knights (Maleginis) undertakes the exploit;

who reconnoitres Arthur's host, and says it is 10,000 strong: whereon Galiot charges him to take the same number.

Galiot's host set out.

Arthur's host don their armour.

Arthur, hearing that Galiot is unarmed, will not arm himself;

but calls Gawane, and tells him how to order his battalions.

Befeching hyme, [hyme] wifly to for-see
Azaine thei folk, wich was far mo than hee.
He knew the charg and paſſith one his way
Furth to his horſs, and makith no dulay ;
The clarioun*is* blew and furth goth al onoñ,
Gawane and his men cross over the water at the ford. And our ye watt*er* and the furd ar goñe.
Within o playne vpone that other ſyd
Ther gawan gon his batellis to dewide,
As he wel couth, and set them *in* aray,
Syne with o manly contynans can ſay,
He harangues his men. " Ye falowis wich of the round table beñ,
Through al this erth whois fam is hard *and* ſen,
Reme*m*brith now It ſtondith one the poynt,
For why It lyith one your ſperis poynt,[1]
[Fol. 11.] The well-fare of the king and of our londe ;
And ſen the ſucour lyith in your honde,
And hardement is thing ſhall moſt awaill
Frome deth ther men of armys in bataill,
Lat now your ma*n*hed and your hie curage
The pryd of al thir multitude aſſuage ;
Deth or defence, non other thing we wot."
Maleginis and all his host come over the plain, and Gawane sends a company against them. This freſch king, that maleginis was hot,
With al his oſt he cu*m*myne our the plañ,
And gawan ſend o batell hyme agañ ;
In myde the borde,[2] and feſtinit in the ſtell
The ſperithis poynt, that bitith ſcharp *and* well ;
But they were all too few ; wherefore Gawane sends a second company ; Bot al to few thei war, and my*ch*t no*ch*t leſt
This gret Rout that cu*m*myth one ſo faſt.
Than haith ſ*ir* gawan ſend, them to ſupport,
One othir batell with one kny*ch*tly sorte ;
then a third ; then a fourth ; and then sets out himself, to resist the 10,000. And ſyne the thrid, and ſyne the ferde alſo ;
And ſyne hyme-ſelf one to the feld can go,
When that he ſauch thar latt*er* batell ſteir,
And the ten thouſand cu*m*myne al thei veir ;

[1] At the bottom of this page appears for the first time a catchword, which is—" The wel fare." [2] Or " berde."

Qwhar that of armes prewit he so well,
His ennemys gane his mortall [ſtrokis] fell.
He goith ymong them in his hie curage,
As he that had of knyghthed the wſage,
And couth hyme weill *con*ten *in* to on hour;
Aȝaine his ſtrok reſiſtit non armour;
And mony knyc*h*t, that worth ware and bolde,
War thore with hyme of arthur*is* houſhold,
And knyghtly gan one to the feld them bere,
And mekil wroght of armys In to were;
Sir gawan than vpone ſuch wyſ hyme bure,
This othere goith al to diſcu*m*fitoure;
Sewyne thouſand fled, *and* of the feld thei go,
Whar-of this king in to his hart was wo,
For of hyme ſelf he was of hie curage.
To galiot than ſend he in meſag,
That he ſhuld help his folk for to defende;
And he to hyme hath xxx^te^ thousand sende;
Whar-of this king gladith in his hart,
And thinkith to Reweng all the ſmart
That he to-for haith ſuffirit and the payne.
And al his folk returnyt Is ayayne
Atour the feld, and cu*m*myne thilk as haill;[1]
The ſwyft horſ goith firſt to the aſſall.
This noble knyght that ſeith the gr*e*te forſ
Of armyt men, that cu*m*myne vpone horſ,
To-giddir ſemblit al his falowſchip,
And thoght them at the ſharp poynt to kep,
So that thar harm̄ ſhal be ful deir yboght.
This vthere folk with ſtraucht courſ hath ſocht
Out of aray atour the larg felld;
Thar was the ſtrok*is* feſtnit *in* the ſhelde,
Thei war Reſauit at the ſper*is* end.
So arthur*is* folk can manfully defend;

He goes among them in his courage,

and many other of Arthur's knights perform wonders.

Maleginis goeth to discomfiture, and 7,000 of his men flee.

Galiot sends him 30,000 more.

[Fol. 11 b.]

His folk return across the field as thick as hail.

Arthur's folk receive them manfully,

[1] MS. "thilk as (Rayne) haill," as if it were at first intended to find a rime to "ayayne."

The formeſt can thar lyues end conclude,
Whar ſone aſſemblit al the multitude.
Thar was defens, ther was gret affaill,
Richt wonderfull and ſtrong was ye bataill,
but sustain much pain, Whar arthuris folk ſuſtenit mekil payn,
And knychtly them defendit haith aȝaine.
and cannot endure against so many. Bot endur thei mycht, apone no wyß,
The multitude and ek the gret ſupprißs;
But gawan, wich that ſetith al his payn
Vpone knyghthed, defendid ſo aȝaine,
That only in the manhede of this knyght
His folk reIoſit them of his gret myght,
And ek abaſit hath his ennemys;
For throw the feld he goith in ſuch wyß,
And in the preß ſo manfully them ſeruith,
Gawane carves helmets in two, and smites heads off shoulders; His ſuerd atwo the helmys al to-kerwith,
The hedis of he be the ſhouderis ſmat;
The horß goith, of the maiſter deſolat.
But what awaleth al his beſynes,
So ſtrong and ſo inſufferable vas the preß?
but his men recross the ford to go to their lodges. His folk are paſſit atour the furdis ilkon,
Towart ther bretis and to ther luges gon;
Whar he and many worthy knyght alſo
Of arthuris houß endurit mekill wo,
That neuer men mar in to armys vroght
Of manhed, ȝit was It al for noght.
[Fol. 12.] Thar was the ſtrenth, ther was the paſing myght
Gawane fights alone till night, Of gawan, wich that whill the dirk nyght
Befor the luges faucht al hyme aloñ,
When that his falowis entrit ware ilkoñ,
On arthuris half war mony tan and ſlan;
when Galiot's folk return home. And galotis folk Is hame returnyd aȝaine,
For it was lait; away the oſtis ridith,
And gawan ȝit apone his horß abidith,
With ſuerd in hond, when thei away var gon,
And ſo for-wrocht hys lymmys ver ilkon,

And wondit ek his body vp and doune,
Vpone his horſ Right thore he fel in ſwoune ; Gawane swoons upon his horse.
And thei hyme tuk *and* to his lugyne bare,
Boith king and qwen of hyme vare *in* diſpare ; 892 The king and queen fear he has brought himself to confusion.
For thei ſuppoſit, throw marwellis that he vroght,
He had hyme-ſelf to his confuſioun*e* broght.
[T]his[1] was nere by of melyhalt, the hyll,
Whar lanſcelot ȝit was *with* the lady ſtill. 896
The kny*chtis* of the court [can] paſing hom̃e ;
This ladiis kny*chtis* to hir palice com,
And told to hir, how that the feld was vent,
And of gawan, and of his hardyme*n*t, 900 The lady of Melyhalt hears of Gawane's deeds;
That merwell was his manhed to behold ;
And ſone thir tithing*is* to the kny*cht* vas told, and Lancelot also,
That was with wo and hewyneſs oppreſt ;
So noyith hyme his ſuiorne and his reſt, 904
And but dulay one for o kny*cht* he send, who sends for a knight to take a message to the lady;
That was moſt ſpeciall with the lady kend.
He comyne, and the kny*cht* vn to hyme ſaid,
" Diſpleſ yow not, ſ*ir*, be ȝhe not ill paid, 908
So homly thus I yow exort to go,
To gare my lady ſpek o word or two
With me, that am a carful pr*e*ſonere."[2]
" S*ir*, your co*m*mande y ſhall, w*ith*outen were, 912
Fulfill ;" and to his lady paſſit hee
In ȝawly wyſ beſiching hir, that ſhe
Wald grant hyme to pas at his requeſt,
Vnto hir kny*cht*, ſtood wnd*er* hir areſt ; 916
And ſhe, that knew al gentilleſ aright,
Furth to his chamber paſſit wight[3] the licht. who comes to his chamber.
[Fol. 12 *b*.]
And he aroſ and ſaluſt Curtaſly
The lady, and ſaid, " madem, her I, 920 Lancelot beseeches her to appoint his ransom,
Your preſoner, beſekith yow that ȝhe
Wold merſy and compaſſione have of me,

[1] See note to this line.
[2] MS. "preson*er*ere." [3] Read "with" (?).

And mak the ranſone wich that I may yeif;
I waiſt my tyme in presoune thus to leife.
For why I her on be report be told,
That arthur, with the flour of his houſholde,
Is cummyne here, and in this cuntre lyis,
And ſtant In danger of his ennemyis,
And haith aſſemblit; and eft this ſhalt bee
Within ſhort tyme one new aſſemblee.
Thar-for, my lady, y youe grace beſech,
That I mycht pas, my Ranſon for to fech;

resuming that some of Arthur's knights will pay it.

Fore I preſume thar longith to that ſort
That louid me, and ſhal my nede ſupport."
"Shire knycht, It ſtant nocht in ſich dugree;

She replies that she does not want a ransom, but has imprisoned him for his guilt.

It is no ranſone wich that cauſith me
To holden yow, or don yow ſich offens;
It is your gilt, It is your wiolens,
Whar-of that I deſir no thing but law,
Without report your awn treſpas to knaw."
"Madem, your pleſance may ye wel fulfill
Of me, that am in preſone at your will.

He prays for pardon,

Bot of that gilt, I was for til excuſ,
For that I did of werrey nede behwſ,
It tuechit to my honore and my fame;
I mycht nocht lefe It but hurting of my nam,
And ek the knycht was mor to blam than I.
But ye, my lady, of your curteſſy,
Wold ȝe deden my Ransoune to reſaue,

and begs for liberty:

Of preſone ſo I my libertee myght haue,
Y ware ȝolde euermore [to be] your knyght,
Whill that I leif, with al my holl myght.
And if ſo be ye lykith not to ma

or at least to be allowed to go to the next battle,

My ranſone, [madem,] if me leif to ga
To the aſſemble, wich ſal be of new;

under a promise to return at night.

And as that I am feithful knycht *and* trew,
At nycht to yow I enter ſhall aȝaine,
But if that deth or other lat certañ,

Throw wich I [may] have ſuch Impediment,
That I be hold,[1] magre myne entent." [Fol. 13.]
"*Sir* kny*cht*," q*uod* ſhe, "I grant yow leif, w*ith*thy — She consents, if he will specify to her his name.
Your name to me that ȝe wil ſpecify."
"Madem, as ȝit, ſutly I ne may
Duclar my name, one be no man*er* way; — He refuses for the present.
But I p*ro*myt, als faſt as I haue tyme
Conuenient, or may vith-outen cryme,
I ſhall;" and than the lady ſaith hyme tyll,
"And I, ſchir kny*cht*, one this condiſcione will
Grant yow leve, ſo that ye oblift bee — She grants him leave, under the proposed condition.
For to Return, as ye haue ſaid to me."
Thus thei accord, the lady goith to reſt,
The ſone diſcending cloſit in the veſt;
The ferd day was dewyſit for to bee
Betuex the oſt*is* of the aſſemblee.
And galiot Richt arly by the day,
Ayane the feld he can h*is* folk aray; — Galiot assembles 40,000 fresh men.
And fourty thouſand armyt m*en* haith he,
That war not at the othir aſſemble,
Co*m*mandit to the batell for to gon;
"And I my-ſelf," q*uod* he, "ſhal me diſpone
On to the feild aȝaine the thrid day;
Whar of this were we ſhal the end aſſay."
And arthur*is* folk that come one eu*er*y ſyd, — Arthur also provides his men for the field.
He for the feld can them for to p*ro*uide,
Wich ware to few aȝaine the gret affere
Of galiot ȝit to ſuſten the were.
The kny*chtis* al out of the cete roſ — The knights of Melyhalt join him.
Of melyholt, and to the ſemble gois.
And the lady haith, in to ſacret wyſ, — The lady secretly provides Lancelot with a red courser, and a shield and spear, both red also.
Gart for hir kny*cht* and preſon*er* dewyſ
In red al thing, that ganith for the were;
His curſeir red, ſo was boith ſcheld *and* ſpere.

[1] MS. "behold."

And he, to qwham the prefone hath ben fmart,
With glaid defir apone his curfour ftart;
He rides towards the field, and halts in a plain by the river-side.
Towart the feld anon he gan to ryd,
And in o plan houit one reu*er* syde.
This kny*cht*, the wich that long haith ben i*n* cag,
Lancelot is encouraged, seeing the blithe morn, the mead, the river, the green woods, and the knights and banners.
He grew in to o frefch *and* new curage,
Seing the morow bly*th*full and amen,
The med, the Reuer, and the vodis gren,
The kny*chtis* in [ther] armys them arayinge,
[Fol. 13 *b*.]
The baner*is* ayaine the feld difplayng,
His 3outh in ftrenth and in p*rof*perytee,
And fyne of luft the gret aduerfytee.[1]
Thus in his tho*cht* reme*m*bryng at the laft,
Casting his eyes aside, he sees the queen looking over a parapet.
Efte*r*ward one fyd he gan his Ey to caft,
Whar our a bertes[2] lying haith he sen
Out to the feld luking was the qwen;
Sudandly with that his goft aftart
Love catches him by the heart.
Of loue anone haith caucht hyme by the hart;
Than faith he, "How long fhall It be so,
Loue, at yow fhall wirk me al this wo?
Apone this wyf to be Infortunat,
Hir for to fe*r*ue the wich thei no thing wate
What fufferance I in hir wo endure,
Nor of my wo, nor of myne aduenture?
And I wnworthy ame for to attane
To hir p*resens*, nor dare I noght complane.
He counsels his heart to help itself at need,
Bot, hart, fen at yow knawith fhe is here,
That of thi lyue and of thi deith is ftere,
Now is thi tyme, now help thi-felf at neid,
And the dewod of eu*ery* point of dred,
to forego cowardice,
That cowardy be none In to the sen̄,
Fore and yow do, yow knowis thi peyne, I weyn;
Yow art wnable eu*er* to attane
To hir mercy, or cum be ony mayne.

[1] May we read "diuerfytee"?
[2] MS. "abertes."

Tharfor y red hir thonk at yow differue, and to deserve her thanks or die.
Or in hir *preſens* lyk o kny*cht* to ſterf."
With that confuſit *with* an hewy tho*cht*, Confused with a heavy thought,
Wich ner his deith ful oft tyme haith hyme ſo*cht*,
Deuoydit was his *sprit*is and his goſt,
He wiſt not of hyme-ſelf nor of his oſt;
Bot one his horſ, als ſtill as ony ſton. he [sits] on his horse as still as stone.
When that the kny*cht*is armyt war ilkon,
To warnnyng them vp goith the bludy ſown, The bugles are blown, and the
And eu*ery* knyght vpone his horſ is bown; knights are ready on horseback,
Twenty thouſand armyt men of were. 20,000 in number.
The king that day he wold non armys bere;
His batell*is* ware devyſit eu*er*ilkon,
And them forbad out our the furd*is* to gon. They are forbidden to cross the fords, but cannot be restrained.
Bot frome that thei ther ennemys haith sen,
In to ſuch wys thei cou*th* them noght ſuſteñ;
Bot ovr thei went vithouten more delay, [Fol. 14.]
And can them one that oy*er* sid aſſay.
The red kny*cht* ſtill in to his hewy thoght The red knight still halting by the ford, a herald seizes his bridle, and bids him awake.
Was hufyng ȝit apone the furd, *and* noght
Wiſt of hime ſelf; with that a harrold com,
And ſone the kny*cht* he be the brydill nom,
Saying, "awalk! It is no tyme to ſlep;
Your worſchip more expedient vare to kep."
No word he ſpak, ſo prikith hyme the ſmart
Of hevynes, that ſtood vnto his hart.
Two ſcrewis cam with that, of quhich [that] oñ Two shrews next approach; one takes his shield off his neck,
The kny*chtis* ſheld ry*cht* frome his hals haith toñ;
That vthir watt*er* takith atte laſt, the other casts water at his ventayle, which causes him to wink, and arouse himself.
And in the kny*chtis* wentail haith It caſt;
When that he felt the vatt*er* that vas cold,
He wonk, and gan about hyme to behold,
And thinkith how he ſum-quhat haith myſgoñ.
With that his ſpere In to his hand haith ton,
Goith to the feild *with*outen vordis more; He goes to the field, and sees the first-conquest king.
So was he vare whare that there cam before,

O manly man he was in to al thing,
And clepit was the ferſt-conquest king.
The Red knycht with [the] ſpuris ſmat the ſted,
The tother cam, that of hyme hath no drede ;
They meet. With ferß curag ben the knychtis met,
The king his ſpere apone the knycht hath set,
That al in peciß flaw in to the felde ;
The red knight, though shieldless, overthrows his foe. His hawbrek helpit, ſuppos he had no ſcheld.
And he the king in to the ſcheld haith ton,
That horß and man boith to the erd ar gon.
The shrew restores his shield. Than to the knycht he cummyth, that haith tan
His ſheld, to hyme deliuerith It ayane,
Beſiching hyme that of his Ignorance,
That knew hyme nat, as takith no grewance.
The knycht his ſche[l]d but mor delay haith tak,
And let hyme go, and no thing to hyme ſpak.
Than thei the [1] wich that ſo at erth haith ſen
The men of the first-conquest king come to the rescue. Ther lord, the ferſt-conqueſt king, y meñ,
In haiſt thei cam, as that thei var agrevit,
And manfully thei haith ther king Releuit.
[A]nd Arthuris folk, that lykith not to byde,
In goith the spuris in the ſtedis syde ;
[Fol. 14 b.] To-giddir thar aſſemblit al the oft :
At whois meting many o knycht was loſt.
The battle was right cruel to behold. The batell was richt crewell to behold,
Of knychtis wich that haith there lyvis ȝolde.
One to the hart the ſpere goith throw the ſcheld,
The knychtis gaping lyith in the feld.
The red knycht, byrnyng in loues fyre,
Goith to o knycht, als ſwift as ony vyre,
The wich he perſit throuch *and* throuch the hart ;
The red knight loses his spear, but draws his sword, and roams the field like a lion. The ſpere is went ; with that anon he ſtart,
And out o fuerd in to his hond he tais ;
Lyk to o lyone in to the feld he gais,

[1] MS. "thei," altered to "thee," which is still wrong.

In to his Rag ſmyting to and fro
Fro ſum the arm, fro ſum the nek in two,
Sum in the feild lying is in ſwoun,
And sum his ſuerd goith to the belt al douñe. 1100 Some he cleaves to the belt.
For qwhen that he beholdith to the qwen,
Who had ben thore his manhed to haue sen,
His doing in to armys and his myght,
Shwld ſay in world war not ſuch o wight. 1104
His faloufchip siche comfort of his dede His fellows take comfort from his deeds,
Haith ton, that thei ther ennemys ne dreid;
But can them-self ay manfoly conten
In to the ſtour, that hard was to ſuſten; 1108
For galyot was O paſing multitude though Galiot's host was a surpassing multitude.
Of prewit men in armys that war gude,
The wich can *with* o freſch curag affaill
Ther ennemys that day In to batell; 1112
That ne ware not the vorſchip *and* manhede Had it not been for the manhood of the red knight, Arthur's folk had been in peril.
Of the red kny*cht*, in *per*ell and in dreid
Arthur*is* folk had ben, vith-outen vere;
Set thei var good, thei var of ſmal powere. 1116
And gawan, wich gart bryng hyme-ſelf befor Gawane is led to the parapet,
To the bertes, set he was vondit sore,
Whar the qwen vas, and whar that he my*cht* see
The manere of the oft and aſſemble; 1120
And when that he the gret manhed haith sen
Of the red kny*cht*, he ſaith one to the qwen, and saith to the queen, that none ever did better than yon red knight.
"Madem, ȝone knyght in to the armys Rede,
Nor neu*er* I hard nore ſaw in to no ſted 1124
O kny*cht*, the wich that in to ſchortar ſpace
In armys haith mor forton nore mor grace;
Nore bettir doith boith with ſper and ſcheild,
He is the hed and comfort of our feild." 1128 [Fol. 15.]
"Now, ſir, I traiſt that neu*er* more vas ſen The queen prays for Lancelot.
No man in feild more knyghtly hyme *con*ten;
I pray to hyme that eu*er*y thing hath cure,
Saif hyme fro deth or wykit aduenture." 1132

The field was perilous on both sides,

The feild It was ry*cht* p*er*ellus and ſtrong
On boith the ſydis, and continewit long,

from early morn till the sun had gone down.

Ay from the ſone the varld*is* face gan licht
Whill he was gone *and* cum*y*ne vas the nycht ;
And than o forꝺ thei my*cht* It not afſtart,
On eue*ry* fyd behouit them depart.

Every knight then returns home, and the red knight privily goes back to the city.

The feild is don and ham goith eue*ry* kny*cht*,
And prevaly, unwiſt of any wicht,
The way the red kny*cht* the cete taiis,
As he had hecht, *and* in h*is* chambre gais.
When arthure hard how the kny*cht* Is gon,
He blamyt fore his lordis eue*r*ilk-one ;
And oft he haith remembrit in his thoght,

Arthur, seeing the multitude of Galiot's men, recalls his dream, saying,

What multitud that galiot had broght ;
Seing his folk that ware so ewil arayt,
In to his mynd he ſtondith al affrayt,
And ſaith, "I traiſt ful ſuth It ſal be founde
My drem Richt as the clerk*is* gan expounde ;

"My men now fail me at need."

For why my men failȝeis now at neid,
My-ſelf, my londe, in p*er*ell and in dreide."

Galiot tells his council

And galiot vpone hie worſchip set,
And his conſell anon he gart be fet,
To them he ſaith, "with arthur weil ȝe see
How that It ſtant, and to qwhat degre,
Aȝanis ws that he is no poware ;

that there is no honour in conquering Arthur,

Wharfor, me think, no worſchip to ws ware
In conqueryng of hyme, nor of his londe,
He haith no ſtrenth, he may ws not vithſtonde.
Wharfor, me think It beſt is to delay,

and proposes a twelvemonth's truce.

And reſput hyme for a tuelmoñeth day,
Whill that he may aſſemble al his myght ;
Than is mor worſchip aȝanis hyme to ficht ;"
And thus concludit thoght hyme for the beſt.
The very kny*chtis* paſſing to there Reſt ;
Of melyholt the ladeis kny*chtis* ilkone
Went home, and to hir p*rese*ns ar thei gon ;

At qwhome ful ſone than gan ſcho to Inquere,
And al the maner of the oſt*is* till spere;
How that It went, and in what man*er* wyſ,
Who haith moſt worſchip, *and* who is moſt to pryſ?
"Madem," q*uod* thei, "O kny*cht* was In the feild,
Of Red was al his armour and his ſheld,
Whois manhed can al otheris to exced,
May nan report in armys half his deid;
Ne wor his worſchip, ſhortly to conclud,
Our folk of help had ben al deſtitud.
He haith the thonk, the vorſchip in hyme lyis,
That we the feld defendit in ſich wyſ."
The lady thane one to hir-ſelf haith tho*cht*,
"Whether Is ȝone my pr*e*ſonar, ore noght?
The ſuthfaſtneſ that ſhal y wit onon."
When euery wight vn to ther Reſt war gon,
She clepith one hir cwſynes ful nere
Wich was to hir moſt ſpeciall and dere,
And ſaith to hir, "qwheyar if yone bee
Our preſoner, my consell Is we see."
With that the maden In hir hand hath ton
O torche, and to the ſtabille ar thei gon;
And fond his ſted lying at the ground,
Wich wery was, ywet w*ith* mony wounde.
The maden ſaith, "vpone this horſ is ſen,
He in the place quhar strok*is* was hath beñ;
And ȝhit the horſ It is no*cht* wich that hee
Furt*h* w*ith* hyme hade;"—the lady ſaid, "p*er* dee,
He vſyt haith mo horſ than one or two;
I red one to his armys at we go."
Tharwith one to his armys ar thei went;
Thei fond his helm, thei fond his hawbrek rent,
Thei fond his ſcheld was fruſchit al to no*cht*;
At ſchort, his armour In sich wyſ vas vro*cht*
In eu*e*ry place, that no thing was left haill,
Nore neu*er* eft accordith to bataill.

The lady of Melyholt asks her knights who hath won most honour.

[Fol. 15 b.]

They reply, that a red knight had exceeded all others.

The lady wonders if her prisoner is meant.

She calls her cousin,

who takes a torch, and they go to the stable,

and find his steed wounded.

Next they view his armour,

and find his hauberk rent, and his shield frushed all to naught.

They think he has well used his armour.

Than faith the lady to hir cuſyneſ,
"What ſal we ſay, what of this mat*er* geſ?"
"Madem, I ſay, thei have no*cht* ben abwsyt;
He that them bur ſchortly he has them vſyt."
"That may ȝe ſay, ſuppos the beſt that lewis,
Or moſt of worſchip in til armys prewis,
Or ȝhit haith ben in ony tyme beforn̄,
Had them in feld in his maſt curag born̄."

They next visit the knight himself,

"Now," q*uod* the lady, "will we paſ, and see
The kny*cht* hyme-self, and ther the fut*h* may we
[Fol. 16.] Knaw of this thing." Incontynent them[1] boith
Thir ladeis vn to his chambre goith.

who was now asleep.

The kny*cht* al wery fallyng was on ſlep;
This maden paſſith In, *and* takith kep.

The lady's cousin observes his breast and shoulders bloody, his face hurt, and his fists swollen.

Sche ſauch his breſt *with* al his ſchowd*er*is bare,
That bludy war and woundit her and thare;
His face was al to-hurt and al to-ſchent,
His newis ſwellyng war and al to-Rent.
Sche ſmylyt a lyt, and to hir lady ſaid,
"It ſemyth weill this kny*cht* hath ben aſſaid."

The lady next observes him,

The lady ſauch, and rewit in hir thoght
The kny*chtis* worſchip wich that he haith vroght.

and is smitten to the heart by the dart of love,

In hire Reme*m*brance loues fyre dart
W*ith* hot deſyre hir ſmat one to the hart;
And then a quhill, w*ith*-outen word*is* mo,
In to hir mynd thinking to and fro,
She ſtudeit ſo, and at the laſt abraid
Out of hir tho*cht*, and ſudandly thus ſaid,

and prays her cousin to draw aside, while she kisses the knight.

"W*ith*-draw," q*uod* ſhe, "one ſyd a lyt[2] the lyght,
Or that I paſ that I may kyſ the knyght."

Her cousin reproves her,

"Madem," q*uod* ſche, "what is It at ȝe meñ?
Of hie worſchip our mekill have ȝe señ
So sone to be ſuppr*iſit* w*ith* o thoght.

lest the knight should awake.

What is It at ȝhe think? p*reſ*wm ȝe noght
That if yon kny*cht* wil walkin, and p*er*ſaif,

[1] "then" (?). [2] MS. "alyt."

He ſhal yarof no thing bot ewill conſaif;
In his entent Ruput yow therby
The ablare to al lyᶜʰtneſ and foly?
And blam the more al vtherᵉ in hᵉ mynd,
If your gret wit in ſich deſire he fynde?"
"Nay," qᵘod the lady, "no thing may I do
For ſich o knyᶜʰt may be defam me to."
"Madem, I wot that for to loue yone knyᶜʰt,
Conſidir his fame, his worſchip, and hᵉ myᶜʰt;
And to begyne as worſchip wil dewyſ,
Syne he ayaine myᶜʰt lowe yow one ſuch wyſ,
And hold yow for his lady and his loue,
It war to yow no maner of Reprwe.
But quhat if he appelit be and thret
His hart to lowe, and ellis whar y-ſet?
And wel y wot, madem, if It be so,
His hart hyme sal not ſuffir to loue two,
For noble hart wil have no dowbilneſ;
If It be ſo, ȝhe tyne yowr low, I geſ;
Than is your-ſelf, than is your loue Refuſit,
Your fam is hurt, your gladneſ is concluſit.
My confell is, therfore, you to abſten
Whill that to yow the werray Ryᶜʰt be ſeñ
Of his entent, the wich ful ſon ȝhe may
Have knawlag, If yow lykith to affay."
So mokil to hir lady haith ſhe vroght
That at that tyme ſhe haith Retᵘrnyt hᵢr thoᶜʰt,
And to hir chambre went, wᵢthouten more,
Whar loue of new affaith hir ful sore.
So well long thei ſpeking of the knyᶜʰt,
Hir cuſynace hath don al at ſhe myᶜʰt
For to expel that thing out of hir thoᶜʰt;
It wil not be, hir labour Is for noᶜʰt.
Now leif we hir In to hir neweſt pan,
And to arthur we wil retwrn agañ.

The lady replies.

Her cousin next argues the point;

"What if he loves another?"

[Fol. 16 *b*.]

She persuades the lady to return to her chamber, without further delay.

Her cousin labours to expel her love for Lancelot from her thoughts, but her labour is in vain.

EXPLICIT P*RIMUS* LIBER, INCIPIT SECUND*US*.

[BOOK II.]

Night.

The clowdy nyght, wndir whois obſcure
The reſt and quiet of euery criatur
Lyith ſauf, quhare the goſt *with* beſyneſ
Is occupiit, *with* thoghtfull hewynes;
And, for that tho*ch*t furth ſchewing vil h*is* my*ch*t,
Go fare-wel reſt and quiet of the ny*ch*t.

Arthur cannot rest.

Artur, I meyne, to whome that reſt is no*ch*t,
But al the ny*ch*t ſuppriſit is with tho*ch*t;
In to his bed he turnyth to and fro,
Remembryng the apperans of his wo,
That is to ſay, his deith, his confuſioune,
And of his realme the opin diſtruccioune.
That in his wit he can no thing p*ro*wide,
Bot tak his forton thar for to abyd.

The sun goeth up.

Vp goith the ſon, vp goith the hot morow;
The thoghtful king al the ny*ch*t to ſorow,

[Fol. 17.]

That ſauch the day, vpone his feit he ſtart,

Arthur goeth forth.

And furth he goith, diſtrublit in his hart.
A quhill he walkith in his penſyf goſt,

He hears that a clerk has arrived,

So was he ware thar cu*mm*yne to the oft
O clerk, with whome he was aqwynt befor,
In to his tyme non bett*er* was y-bore;
Of qwhois com he gretly vas Reioſit,
For in to hyme ſum comfort he ſuppoſit;

between whom and himself there was a hearty affection.

Betuex them was one hartly affeccioune.

Non ord*er*is had he of Relegioune,
Fam*us* he was, and of gret excellence,

He was expert in the seven sciences,

And ry*ch*t exp*er*t in al the vij. ſcience;
Contemplatif and chaſt in gou*er*nance,

and was named Amytans.

And clepit was the maiſt*er* amytans.

The king befor his palȝoun*e* one the gren,
That knew hyme well, *and* haith his cu*m*myn ſeñ,
Velcu*m*myt hyme, and maid hyme ry*ch*t gud chere, Arthur welcomes him.
And he agan, agrewit as he were,
Saith, "nothir of thi faloſing, nor the, He recks nothing of Arthur's salutation.
Ne rak I no*ch*t, ne charg I no*ch*t," q*uod* hee.
Than q*uod* the king, "maiſter, *and* for what why The king inquires what trespass he has committed.
Ar ȝe agrewit? or quhat treſſpas have I
Co*m*mytit, ſo t͟hat I ſhal yow diſples?"
Quod he, "no thing It is ayane myn eſ͟, He replies, "It is not against me, but against thyself.
But only *con*trare of thi-ſelf alway;
So fare the courſ͟ yow paſſith of the way.
Thi ſchip, that goth apone the ſtormy vall, Thy ship is almost drowned in the whirlpool.
Ney of thi careldis in the ſwelf it fall,
Whar ſhe almoſt is in the p*er*ell drent;
That is to ſay, yow art ſo far myſwent
Of wykitneſ͟ vpone the vrechit dans,
That yow art fallyng in the storng[1] vengans
Of goddis wreth, that ſhal the ſon deuour; That is, God's wrath shall soon devour thee.
For of his ſtrok approchit now the hour
That boith thi Ringe, thi ceptre, *and* thi crovñ,
Frome hie eſtat he ſmyting ſhal adoune.
And that accordith well, for in thi tho*ch*t
Yow knawith not hyme, the wich that haith the wro*ch*t, Because thou knowest Him not, who set thee up in this high estate,
And ſet the vp in to this hie eſtat
From powert; for, as the-ſelwyne wat,
It cu*m*myth al bot only of his myght,
And not of the, nor of thi elder*is* Richt
To the diſcending, as in heritage,
For yow was not byget in to spouſag. though not begotten in spousage.
Wharfor yow aucht his biding to obſerf, [Fol. 17 *b*.]
And at thy my*ch*t yow ſhuld hyme pleſ͟ *and* ſerf;
That dois yow nat, for yow art ſo confuſſit
With this fals warld, that thow haith hyme Refuſit,

[1] So in MS. Is it necessary to alter it to "strong"?

And brokine haith his reul and ordynans,
The wich to the he gave in gouernans.

He made thee king,

He maid the king, he maid the gouernour,
He maid the ſo, and ſet in hie honour
Of Realmys and of [diuerſ] peplis ſere;
Efter his loue thow ſhuld them Reul *and* ſtere,
And wnoppreſſit kep in to Iuſtice,
The wykit men and pwnyce for ther wice.
Yow dois no thing, bot al in the *con*trare,

and thou sufferest thy people to fare ill.

And ſuffrith al thi puple to forfare;
Yow haith non Ey but one thyne awn delyt,
Or quhat that pleſing ſhall thyne appetyt.
In the defalt of law and of Iuſtice,
Wndir thi hond is ſufferyt gret ſuppriſ
Of fadirleſ, and modirleſ alſo,
And wedwis ek ſuſtenit mekill wo.

The poor are oppressed.

With gret myſchef oppreſſit ar the pure;
And thow art cauſ of al this hol Iniure,
Whar-of that god a raknyng ſal craf
At the, and a ſore Raknyng ſal hafe;
For thyne eſtat is gewyne to Redreſ
Thar ned, and kep them to ry*ch*twyneſ;
And thar is non that ther complant*is* her*is*;
The my*ch*ty folk, and ek the flattereris
Ar cheif with the, and doith this oppreſſiou*n*;

If they complain, it is their confusion.

If thai complen, It is ther confuſſiou*ne*.
And daniell ſaith that who doith to the pure,
Or fad*er*leſ, or modirleſ, EnIure,
Or to the puple, that ilke to god doth hee;
And al this harme ſuſtenit Is throw the.
Yow ſufferith them, oppreſſith *and* anoyith;
So yow art cauſ, throw the thei ar diſtroyth;
Than, at thi my*ch*t, god ſo diſtroys yow.

What wilt thou do, when God destroys sinners off the visage of the earth?

What ſhal he do a3ane? quhat ſhal yow,
When he diſtroys by vengance of his ſuerd
The ſynar*is* fra the vysag*is* of the Erde?

Than vtraly yow ſhall diſtroyt bee;
And that Richt weill apper*is* now of thee,
For yow allon byleft art ſolitere;
And the wyſ ſalamon can duclar,
'Wo be to hyme that is byleft alone,
He haith no help;' ſo Is thi forton goñe;
For he is callit, w*ith* quhom that god is no*cht*,
Allone; and ſo thi wykitneſ haith wro*cht*
That god hyme-ſelf he is bycu*m*myn thi ſo,
Thi pupleis hart*is* haith thow tynt alſo;
Thi wykitneſ thus haith the maid alon,
That of this erth thi fortone Is y-goñ.
Yow mone thi lyf, yow mone thi vorſchip tyne,
And eft to deth that neue*r* ſhal haf fyne."
"Maiſte*r*," q*uo*d he, "of yowre beneuolens,
Y yow beſech that tueching my*n* offens,
ȝhe wald wichſaif your conſell to me If
How I ſal mend, and ek her-eftir leif."
"Now," q*uo*d the maiſter, "and I have me*r*well qwhy
Yow aſkith conſail, and wil in non affy,
Nor wyrk thar-by; and ȝhit yow may In tym,
If yow lykith to amend the cryme."
"ȝhis," ſaith the king, "and ſuthfaſtly I will
ȝour ordynans in eue*r*y thing fulfyll."
"And if the liſt at conſail to abide,
The remed of thi harme to pr*o*uyde—
Firſt, the begyning is of ſapiens,
To dreid the lord and his mag*ni*ficens;
And what thow haith in contrar hyme ofendit,
Whill yow haith my*cht*, of fre deſir amend it;[1]
Repent thi gilt, repent thi gret treſpaſ,
And remembir one goddis richwyſneſ;
How for to hyme that wykitneſ anoyt,
And how the way of ſynaris he diſtroit;

1376 1380 1384 1388 1392 1396 1400 1404 1408

Solomon ſaith, 'Wo to him who is left alone! He hath no help.'

[Fol. 18.]

Thou haſt lost thy people's hearts,

and ſhalt come to death that hath no end."

Arthur aſks how he ſhall amend,

and promiſes to fulfil his bidding.

The maſter replies, "Thou muſt firſt dread the Lord.

Repent thy guilt.

[1] MS. "amendit."

And if ye lyk to ryng wnder his peſ,
Ye wengans of his mychty hond yow feſ,
This ſchalt yow do, if yow wil be perfit.
Firſt, mone yow be penitent and contrit
Of euery thing that tuechith thi conſiens,
Done of fre will, or ȝhit of neglygens.

Thy need requireth full contrition.

Thi neid requirith ful contretioune,
Princepaly with-out concluſioune;
With humble hart and goſtly byſyneſ,
Syne ſhalt yow go deuotly the confeſ

Confess to some holy confessor.

Ther-of vnto ſum haly confeſſour,
That the wil conſail tueching thin arour;
And to fulfill his will and ordynans,

Do penance, and amend all wrong."

In ſatiffaccione and doing of penans,
And to amend al wrang and al Iniure,
By the ydone til euery Creature;

[Fol. 18 b.]

If yow can In to thi hart fynde,
Contretioune well degeſt In to thi mynd.
Now go thi weie, for if it leful were,
Confeſſioune to me, I ſhuld It here."

Arthur tries to remember every sin done since his years of innocence,

Than arthur, Richt obedient *and* mek,
In to his wit memoratyve can ſeik
Of euery gilt wich that he can pens,
Done frome he paſſith the ȝer*is* of Innocens;
And as his maiſter hyme commandit had,

and made his confession with lamentable cheer.

He goith and his confeſſione haith he maad
Richt deuotly with lementable chere;
The man*er* wich quho lykith for to here
He may It fynd In to the holl romans,
Of confeſſione o paſing *cer*cumſtans.
I can It not, I am no confeſſour,
My wyt haith ewill conſat of that labour,
Quharof I wot I aucht repent me fore.
The king wich was confeſſit, what is more,
Goith and til his maiſt*er* tellith hee,
How euery fyne In to his awn degree

He shew, that mycht occuryng to his mynde.
"Now," quod the maiſtere, "left thow aght behynde
Of albenak the vorſchipful king ban,
The wich that vas in to my ſeruice ſlan,
And of his wif diſherift eft alſo?
Bot of ther ſone, the wich was them fro,
Ne ſpek[1] y not;"—the king in his entent
Abaſyt was, and furthwith is he went
Agane, and to his confeſſour declarith;
Syne to his maiſter he ayane Reparith,
To quhome he ſaith, "I aftir my cunyng
Your ordinans fulfillit in al thing;
And now right hartly y beſeich and prey,
ȝhe wald withſchaif ſum thing to me ſay,
That may me comfort in my gret dreid,
And how my men ar falȝet in my Neid,
And of my dreme, the wich that is ſo dirk."
This maiſter ſaith, "and thow art bound to virk
AT my conſail, and if yow has maad
Thi confeſſione, as yow before hath ſaid,
And in thi conciens thinkith perſeuere,
As I preſume that thow onon ſhalt here
That god hyme-ſelf ſhal ſo for ye prouide,
Thow ſhal Remayne and In thi Ring abyd.
And why thi men ar falȝet At this nede,
At ſhort this is the cauſ, ſhalt yow nocht dred,
Fore thow to gode was frawart and perwert;
Thi ryngne and the he thocht for to ſubwart;
And yow ſal knaw na power may reciſt,
In contrar quhat god lykith to affi[ſ]t.
The vertw nore the ſtrenth of victory
It cummyth not of man, bot anerly

"Leftest thou aught behind," quoth the master, "about Ban, king of Albanak, and his disinherited wife?"

The king again confesses, and returns,

prays for comfort,

and inquires about his dream.

The master saith, "If thou art bound to work by my counsel,

thou shalt abide in thy kingdom.

[Fol. 19.]

Strength of victory cometh from God only.

[1] MS. apparently has "ſrpek;" but a comparison with line 1543 shews that the apparent *r* is due to the meeting of two slight flourishes belonging to the *s* and *p*.

[2] This line (though it should not) begins with an illuminated letter.

Of hyme, the wich haith eu*e*ry ſtrinth; *and* than,
If that the waiis pleſſit hyme of man,
He ſhal have forſ aȝane his e*n*nemys.
A-ryght agan apone the ſamyne vyſ,
Whoso displeases Him shall be subject to his enemies, as we read in the Bible concerning the Jews.
If he diſpleſ vn to the lord, he ſhall
Be to his fais a ſubiet or a thrall,
As that we may In to the bible red,
Tueching the folk he tuk hyme-ſelf to led
In to the lond, the wich he them byhicht.
Ay when thei ȝhed in to his ways Richt,
Ther fois gon befor there fuerd to no*ch*t;
When they wrought against Him, they were so full of fear that the sound of a falling leaf made a thousand flee.
And when that thei ayanis hyme hath vro*ch*t,
Thei war ſo full of radur and diſſpare,
That of o leif fleing in the air,
The ſound of It haith gart o thouſand tak
At onys apone them-ſelf the bak,
And al ther manhed vterly foryhet;
Sich dreid the lord apone ther hart*is* set.
So ſhalt yow know no powar may *with*ſtond,
Ther god hyme-ſelf hath ton the cauſ on hond.
Thine own offence is the reason why thy people fail thee.
And ye quhy ſtant in thyne awn offens,
That al thi puple falȝhet off defens.
And ſum ar falȝeing magre ther entent;
Thei ar to quhom thow yewyne hath thi rent,
Thi gret Reuard, thi richeſ and thi gold,
And cheriſſith and held in thi houſhold.
Bot the moſt p*art* ar falȝheit the at wyll,
Thou hast shewn some of them unkindness,
To quhome yow haith wnkyndneſ ſchawin till;
Wrong and *in*Iure, and ek defalt of law,
And pwnyſing of qwhich that thei ſtand aw;
And makith ſ*er*uice but reward or fee,
Syne haith no thonk bot fre*m*mytneſ of the.
Such folk to the cu*m*myth bot for dred,
Not of fre hart the for to help at nede.
And what awalith owthir ſheld or ſper,
Or horſ or armoure according for ye were,

Vith-outen man them for to ſtere and led? [Fol. 19 b.]
And man, yow wot, that vantith hart is ded, and a man that wanteth heart is dead.
That in to armys *fe*ruith he of noght;
A cowart oft ful mekil harm haith vroght.
In multitude nore ȝhit in confluens
Of ſich, is nowther manhed nore defens.
And ſo thow hath the rewlyt, that almoſt Thou hast so conducted thyself as to lose all thy people's hearts.
Of al thi puple the hart*is* ben ylost;
And tynt richt throw thyne awn myſgou*er*nans
Of auerice and of thyne errogans.
What is o prince? quhat is o gou*er*noure What is a prince without honour?
W*ith*outen fame of worſchip and honour?
What is his my*ch*t, ſuppos he be A lorde,
If that his folk ſal no*ch*t to hyme accorde?
May he his Rigne, may he his holl Empire Can he by himself sustain his kingdom, by serving his own appetite?
Suſten al only of his owne deſyre,
In ſerwyng of his wrechit appetit
Of awerice and of his awn delyt,
And hald his men, wncherift, in thraldome?
Nay! that ſhal ſone his hie eſtat conſome. His oppression of his people consumes his high estate, and makes other kings war on them.
For many o kny*ch*t[1] therby is broght ydoune,
All vt*r*aly to ther confuſioune;
For oft it makith vther king*is* by
To wer on them In traſt of victory;
And oft als throw his peple is diſtroyth,
That fyndith them agrewit or anoyth;
And god alſo oft w*ith* his awn ſwerd, God also punishes their vices."
Punyſith ther wyſis one this erd.
Thus falith not o king but gou*er*nans,
Boith realme and he goith one to myſchans."

AS thai war thus ſpeking of this thinge, Meanwhile, the king of a hundred knights and the first-conquest king come from Galiot,
Frome galiot cam two kny*ch*t*is* to the king;
That one the king of hunde*r*eth kny*ch*t*is* was;
That other to nome the fyrſt-co*n*queſt king[2] has,

[1] "king" (?).
[2] MS. "kinghe," a spelling due to confusion with "knight." See l. 1533.

At firſt that galyot conquerit of one.
The *ner*eſt way one to the king thei gon,
And vp he roſ, as he that wel cout*h* do
Honor, to quhome that It afferith to;
And ȝhit he wiſt not at thei king*is* were;
So them[1] thei both and vyt*h* ryc*h*t knyghtly cher
Reue*r*endly thei ſaluſt hyme, and thane
and the former delivers his message, to the effect that — The king of hund*er* knyght*is* he began
And ſaid hyme, "f*ir*, to ȝow my lord ws ſende,
[Fol. 20.] Galiot, whilk bad ws ſay he wende,
That of this world the vorthieſt king wor ȝhe,
Greteſt of men and of awtoritee.
Galiot wonders at the feebleness of Arthur's folk, — Wharof he has gret wond*er* that ȝhe ar
So feble cu*m*myne In to his contrare,
For to defend your cuntre *and* your londe,
And knowith well ȝhe may hyme noc*h*t w*ith*ſtonde.
Wharfor he thinkith no worſchip to conquere,
Nore in the wer*is* more to p*er*ſyuere;
Conſiddir yowr wakneſ and yowr Indegens,
Aȝanis hyme as now to mak defens.
and is willing to grant a year's truce, — Wharfore, my lord haith grantit by vs here
Trewis to yhow and reſput for o ȝhere,
if Arthur will return to fight against him in a year's time; — If that yhow lykith by the ȝher*is* ſpace
For to retwrn ayane In to this place,
Her to manteine yhour cuntre and w*ith*ſtond
Hyme w*ith* the holl power of yhour lond.
And for the tyme the trewis ſhal endure,
Yhour cuntre and yhour lond he will aſſurre;
And wit ȝhe ȝhit his powar is noc*h*t here.
And als he bad ws ſay yhow by the yhere,
and desires to have the red knight in his household. — The gud knyc*h*t wich that the Red armys bure
And in the feild maid the diſcumfiture,
The whilk the flour of knyc*h*thed may be cold,
He thinkith hyme to haue of his houſhold."

[1] "then" (?).

"Well," quod the king, "I have hard quhat yhe ſay,
But if god will, and ek if that I may,
In to ſich wyſ I think for to withſtond,
Yhour lord ſhall have no powar of my londe."
Of this meſag the king Reioſing haſ,
And of the trewis wich that grantit was,
Bot anoyt ȝhit of the knycht was he,
Wich thei awant to have in ſuch dogre.
Ther leif thei tuk; and when at thei war gon,
[1]This maiſter ſaith, "how lykith god diſpone!
Now may yhow ſe *and* ſuth is my recorde;
For by hyme now is makith this accord;
And by nón vthir worldly providens,
Sauf only grant of his bynewolans,
To ſe if that the lykith to amend,
And to prouid thi cuntre to defend.
Wharfor yow ſhalt in to thi lond home fair,
And gowerne the as that I ſhall declaire.
Firſt, thi god with humble hart yow ſerſe,
And his comand at al thi mycht obſerf;
And ſyne, lat paſ the ilk bleſſit wonde
Of lowe with mercy Iuſtly throw thi londe;
And y beſeich—to quhome yow ſal direke
The rewle vpone, the wrangis to correk—
That yow be nocht in thi electioune blynde;
For writin It Is and yow ſal trew It fynde.
That, be thei for to thonk or ellis blame,
And towart god thi part ſhal be the ſam̄;
Of Ignorans ſhalt yow nocht be excuſit,
Bot in ther werkis ſorly be accuſit,
For thow ſhuld euer cheſ apone ſich wyſ
The miniſteris[2] that rewll haith of Iuſtice:—
Firſt, that he be deſcret til wnderſtond
And lowe and ek the mater of the londe;

Arthur rejoices at the truce,

which the master attributes to God's providence, and exhorts him, saying,

[Fol. 20 *b.*]

"First, serve God with humble heart, and let the wand of law pass through the land.

Thus shalt thou choose the ministers of justice.

[1] The initial T is illuminated. [2] MS. "mīſteris."

And be of mycht and ek Autoritee,
(For puple ay contempnith low degre,)
And that of trouth he folow furth the way;
That is als mych as he louyth trewth alway,
And haitith al them the wich ſal pas therfro.
Syne, that he god dreid and lowe al-so.

Avoid avaricious and wrathful men.

Of auerice be-war with the deſyre,
And of hyme full of haſtynes *and* fyre;
Be-war thar-for of malice and deſire,
And hyme alſo that lowith no medyre;
For al this abhominable was hold,
When Iuſtice was in to the tymis olde.
For qwho that is of an of thir by-know,
The left of them ſubuertith all the low,
And makith It w[n]Iustly [1] to procede;

Eſchew unfit men, for this shall be thy meed in the day of judgment.

Eſchew tharfor, for this ſal be thi meid
Apone the day when al thing goith aright,
Whar none excuſ hidyng ſchal ye lyght;
But he the Iug, that no man may ſuffpek,
Euery thing ful Iuſtly ſal correk.
Be-war thar-with, as before have I told,
And cheſ them wyſly that thi low ſhal hold.
And als I will that it well oft be sen,
Richt to thi-self how thei thi low conten;

Be diligent to inquire how judgment is given.

And how the Right, and how the dom is went,
For to Inquer that yow be delygent.

[Fol. 21.]

And punyſ for, for o thing ſhal yow know,
The most treſpas is to ſubuert the low,
So that yow be not in thar gilt accuſit,
And frome the froit of bliſſit folk refuſit.

Visit every chief town throughout the bounds of thy kingdom.

And pas yow ſhalt to euery chef toune,
Throw-out the boundis of thi Regioune
Whar yow ſall be, that Iuſtice be Elyk
With-out diuiſione baith to pur *and* ryk.

[1] MS. "w Iustly."

And that thi puple have [ane] awdiens
With thar complant*is*, and alſo thi *preſens*;
For qwho his eris frome the puple ſtekith,
And not his hond in ther ſupport furth rekith,
His dom ſall be ful grewous & ful hard,
When he ſal cry and he ſal no*ch*t be hard.
Wharfor thyne eris ifith to the pwre,
Bot in redreſ of ned, & not of *in*Iure;
Thus ſall thei don of Reſſone & knawlag.

But king*is* when thei ben of tend*er* ag,
Y wil not ſay I traſt thei ben excuſit,
Bot ſchortly thei ſall be ſar accuſit,
When ſo thei cum to yheris of Reſone,
If thei tak not full contrifioune,
And pwnyſ them that hath ther low myſgyit.
That this is trouth it may not be denyit;
For vther ways thei ſal them not diſcharg,
[Excep thei pwnyſ them that have the charg][1]
One eſtatis of ther realm, that ſhold
With-in his ȝouth ſe that his low be hold.[2]
And thus thow the, *with* mercy, kep alway
Of Iuſtice furt*h* the ilk bleffit way.

And of thi wordis beis trew and ſtable,
Spek not to mych, nore be not vareable.
O king*is* word ſhuld be o king*is* bonde,
And ſaid It is, a king*is* word ſhuld ſtond;
O king*is* word, among our fade*r*is old,
Al-out more *pre*cious & more ſur was hold
Than was the oth or ſeel of any wight;
O king of trouth ſuld be the werray lyght,
So treuth and Iuſtice to o king accordyth.
And als, as thir clerk*is* old recordith,
[3]In tyme is larges and humilitee
Right well according vnto hie dugre,

Give thine ears to the poor.

Kings, while minors, may be excused;

but, when of age, they must punish those that have wrested justice.

Temper justice with mercy.

Be true and stable in thy words.

A king should be the very light of truth.

[1] A blank space here occurs, just sufficient to contain one line.
[2] MS. "behold."
[3] The initial I is illuminated; rather because there is here a change of subject than because it begins a new sentence.

And pleſſith boith to god and man al-ſo ;
[Fol. 21 b.] Wharfor I wil, in*con*tine*nt* thow go,
And of thi lond in euery p*art* abide,
Whar yow gar fet and clep one eu*ery* ſid
Out of thi cuntreis, and ek out of thi tovnis,
Invite thy dukes, earls, great barons, thy poor knights, and thy bachelors, and welcome them severally.
Thi duk*is*, erlis, and thi gret baronis,
Thi pur kny*chtis*, and thi bach[e]ler*is*,
And them reſauf als hartly as afferis,
And be them-ſelf yow welcum them ilkon :
Syne, them to glaid and cheris, thee diſpone
With feſting and with humyll *con*tynans.
Be not penſyve, nore proud in arrogans,
Keep company not with the rich man only, but with the poor worthy man also.
Bot w*ith* them hold in gladnes cumpany ;
Not with the Rich nor myghty an*erly*,
Bot with the pure worthi man alſo,
W*ith* them thow ſit, w*ith* them yow ryd and go.
I ſay not to be our fameliar,
For, as the moſt philoſephur can duclar,
Yet remember that familiarity breeds contempt.
To mych to oyß familiaritee
Contempnyng bryngith one to hie dugre ;
Bot cherice them w*ith* wordis fair depay*nt*,
So with thi pupelle ſal yow the aquay*nt*.
Choose out of each district an aged knight to be thy counsellor.
Than of ilk cuntre wyſly yow enquere
An agit kny*cht* to be thi conſulere,
That haith ben hold in armys Richt fam*us*,
Wyß and diſcret, & no thing Inwy*us* ;
For there is non that knowith ſo wel, I-wyß,
O worthy man as he that worthi Is.
When thou hast sojourned long in a place, then provide thee with plenty of horses, armour, gold, silver, and clothing;
When well long haith yow ſwiornyt i*n* a place,
And well acqueynt the v*ith* thi puple has,
Than ſhalt thow ordand & p*ro*wid the
Of horß and ek of armour gret plente ;
Of gold, and ſilu*er*, tressore, and cleithing,
and, before leaving, distribute gifts liberally.
And euery Riches that lo*n*gith to o king ;
And when the lykith for to tak thi leif,
By largeß thus yow thi reward geif,

First to the pure worthy honorable,
That is til armys and til manhed able;
(Set he be pur, ȝhit worſchip in hyme bidith);
If hyme the horß one wich thi-ſelwyne Ridith,
And bid hyme that he Rid hyme for yhour ſak;
Syne til hyme gold and filuer yow betak;
The horß to hyme for worſchip and prowes,
The treſor for his fredome and larges.
If moſt of Riches and of Cheriſing;
Eftir this gud knycht berith vitneſing.
Syne to thi tennandis & to thi wawaſouris
If effy haknays, palfrais, and curſouris,
And robis ſich as pleſand ben and fair;
Syne to thi lordis, wich at mychty aire,
As dukis, erlis, princis, and ek kingis,
Yow if them ſtrang, yow if them vncouth thingis,
As diuerß iowellis, and ek preciouß ſtonis,
Or halkis, hundis, ordinit for the nonis,
Or wantone horß that can nocht ſtand in ſtāble;
Thar giftis mot be fair and delitable.
Thus, firſt vn to the vorthi pur yow if
Giftis, that may ther pouerte Releif;
And to the rich iftis of pleſans,
That thei be fair, ſet nocht of gret ſubſtans;
For riches aſkith no thing bot delyt,
And powert haith ay ane appetyt
For to support ther ned and Indigens:
Thus ſhall yow if and makith thi diſpens.
And ek the quen, my lady, ſhalt alſo
To madenis and to ladeis, quhar ȝhe go,
If, and cheriß one the ſamyne wyß;
For in to largeß al thi welfar lyis.
And if thy giftis with ſich continans
That thei be ſen ay gifyne vith pleſans;
The wyß man ſais, and ſuth it is approuit,
Thar is no thonk, thar is no ift alowit,

Give to the poor worthy man the horse thou thyself ridest.

[Fol. 22 a.]

Give to thy tenants and vavasours easy hackneys, palfries, and coursers.

Give to thy lords things strange and uncouth.

So, too, shall the queen give to maidens and ladies,

for all thy welfare lies in liberality.

Bot It be ifyne In to fich manere,
Remember that the giver should be as glad in his cheer as the receiver.
(That is to fay, als glaid *in* to his chere),
As he the wich the ift of hyme Refauith ;
And do he not, the gifar is diffauith.
For who that iff*is*, as he not if wald,
Mor p*rofit* war his ift for to w*ith*-hald ;
His thonk he tynith, and his ift alfo.
Bot that thow ifith, if w*ith* boith two,
Give with both hand and heart at once;
That is to fay, vith hart and hand atonis ;
And fo the wyfman ay ye ift difponis.
Beith larg and iff*is* frely of thi thing ;
for liberality is the treasure of a king.
For largeſ is the trefour of o king,
And not this other Iowell*is* nor this gold
That is in to thi trefory with-holde.
[Fol. 22 *b*.]
Who gladly iffith, be vertew of larges
Whoso gives liberally, his treasury increases.
His trefory encrefis of Richeff,
And fal aȝañe the mor al-out refawe.
For the receiver shall place his goods at the king's disposal,
For he to quhome he ȝewith fall hawe,
Firſt his body, fyne his hart with two,
His gudis al for to difpone also
who shall gain, moreover, both worship and praise.
In his f*er*uice ; and mor atour he fhall
Have O thing, and that is beſt of all ;
That is to fay, the worfchip and the loſ
That vpone larges in this world furth goſ.
And yow fhal knaw the lawbour & the preſ
In to this erth about the gret Richeſ.
Is there any labour except for meat and clothing? All the remnant is for fame.
Is ony, bot[1] apone the cauſ we see
Of met, of cloth, & of p*rof*perite ?
All the remanant ſtant apone the name
Of purches, furth apone this world*is* fame.
And well yow wot, in thyne allegians
Ful many Is, the wich haith ſufficians
Of euery thing that longith to ther ned ;
What haith yow more, qwich [haith] them al to lede,

[1] MS. "Is ony bout bot;" "bout" being defaced.

For al thi Realmys and thi gret Riches,
If that yow lak of worſchip the encreſ?
Well leſ, al-out; for efter thar eſtate
Thei have vorſchip, and kepith It al-gat;
And yow degradith al thyne hie dugree,
That ſo ſchuld ſhyne In to nobelitee,
Throuch wys and throw the wrechitneſ of hart.
And knowis yow not what ſall be[1] thi part,
Out of this world when yow ſal paſ the courſ?
Fair well, I-wyſ! yow neuer ſhall Recourſ:
Whar no prince more ſhall the subiet[2] have,
But be als dep in to the erd y-grave,
Sauf vertew only and worſchip wich abidith;
With them the world apone the laif dewidith;
And if he, wich ſhal eftir the ſucced,
By larges ſpend, of quhich that yhow had dreid,
He of the world comendit is and priſit,
And yow ſtant furth of euery thing diſpiſit;
The puple ſaith and demyth thus of thee,
"Now is he gone, a werray vrech was hee,
And he the wich that is our king and lord
Boith wertew haith & larges in accorde;
Welcum be he!" and ſo the puple ſoundith.
Thus through thi viſ his wertew mor aboundith,
And his vertew the more thi wice furth ſchawith.
Wharfor ȝhe, wich that princes ben y-knawith,
Lat not yhour vrechit hart so yhow dant,
That he that cummyth next yhow may awant
To be mor larg, nore more to be commendit;
Beſt kepit Is the Riches well diſpendit.
O ȝhe, the wich that kingis ben, fore ſham
Remembrith yhow, this world hath bot o naam̃
Of good or ewill, efter ȝhe ar gone!
And wyſly tharfor cheſſith yhow the toñ

1792 1796 1800 1804 1808 1812 1816 1820

Knowest thou not what shall be thy part, when thou passest away from this world?

Virtue and honour will alone remain.

And if thy successor be liberal, he will be commended of the world;

[Fol. 23 a.]

and his virtue will abound through thy vice.

Riches well spent are the best kept.

[1] MS. has "by." [2] MS. has "subeiᵉt."

Wich moſt accordith to nobilitee,
And knytith larges to yhour hie degre.
For qwhar that fredome In O *p*rince Ri*n*gnis,
It bryngith In the victory of king*is*,
And makith realmys and puple boith to dout,
And ſubect*is*[1] of the cuntre al about.

Whoso will be a conqueror, let him not reck to give largely.

And qwho that thinkith ben o co*n*querour,
Suppos his largeſ ſumquhat pas myſour,
Ne rak he nat, bot frely iffith ay;
And as he wynyth, beis var al-way
To mych nor ȝhit to gredy that he hold,
Wich ſal the hart*is* of the puple colde.

Both love and fear spring from liberality.

And low and radour cu*m*myth boith two
Of larges; Reid and ȝhe ſal fynd It ſo.
Alex*ander* this lord the warld that wan,
Firſt w*ith* the ſuerd of larges he began,

Alexander gave so liberally,

And as he wynith iſith largely,
He rakith No thing bot of cheuelry;
Wharfor of hyme ſo paſſith the Renown,

that many cities desired to have such a lord,

That many o cetee, and many o ſtrang townꝭ
Of his worſchip that herith the Recorde,
Diſſirith ſo to haveing ſich o lorde;

and offered themselves peaceably to him, though they were manly men of war.

And offerith them w*ith*-outen ſtrok of ſpere,
Suppos that thei war manly men of were,
But only for his gentilleſ that thei
Have hard; and ſo he louit was al-way
For his larges, humilitee, and manhed,
W*ith* his awn folk, that neue*r*more, we Reid,

[Fol. 23 b.]

For al his weris nor his gret trawell,
In al his tym that thei hyme onys faill;
Bot in his worſchip al thar beſynes
Thei ſet, and lewith in to no diſtres;
Whar-throw the ſuerd of victory he berith.

Many princes bear the palm of

And many prince full oft the palm werith,

[1] Or "subett*is*."

As has ben hard, by largeſ, of before,
In conqueringe of Rignis & of glore.
And wrechitnes Richt ſo, in the contrar,
Haith Realmys maid ful deſolat & bare,
And king*is* broght doun from ful hie eſtat;
And who that Red ther old buk*is*, wat
The vicis lef, the wertew have in mynde,
And takith larges In his awn kynd;
A-myd ſtanding of the vicis two,
Prodegalitee and awerice alſo.
Wharfor her-of It nedith not to more,
So mych ther-of haith clerk*is* vrit to-fore.
Bot who the wertw of larges & the law
Sal cheſ, mot ned conſidir well & knaw
In to hyme-ſelf, and thir thre wnd*er*ſtande,
The ſubſtans firſt, the powar of his land,
Whome to he iffith, and the cauſ wharfore,
The nedful tyme awatith eu*er*more.
Kepith thir thre; for qwho that ſal exced
His rent, he fallith ſodandly in nede.
And ſo the king, that on to myſt*er* drowis,
His subiett*is* and his puple he our-thrawis,
And them diſpoljeith boith of lond and Rent;
So is the king, ſo is the puple ſchent.
For-quhi the woice It ſcrik[i]th vp ful ewyne
W*ith*-out abaid, and paſſith to the hewyne,
Whar god hyme-ſelf reſauith ther the crye
Of the oppreſioune and the teranny,
And vith the ſuerd of wengans dou*n* y-ſmytith,
The wich that caruith al to ſor, and bitith,
And hyme diſtroyth, as has ben hard or this
Of euery king that wirkith ſich o mys.
For ther is few eſchapith them, It fall
Boith vpone hyme & his ſucceſſione fall;
For he forſuth haith ifyne hyme the wond
To Iuſtefy and Reull in pece his lond,

victory, through liberality;

while miserliness hath made realms desolate.

Choose the mean between prodigality and avarice.

Whoso chooses to be liberal,

must understand three things; the *amount he has*, to *whom* he giveth, and the *fit time* for giving.

(1) The king that becomes *indigent* overthrows his subjects.

For the voice of the oppressed shrieketh up ceaselessly to heaven;

and God smiteth down with the sword of vengeance.

For God hath given the king the wand of justice;

[Fol. 24 *a*.]

The puple all ſubmytit to his cure;
And he aȝan one to no creatur
Save only ſhall vn to his gode obey.
And if he paſſith ſo far out of the wey,
Them to oppreſ, that he ſhuld reul & gid,
Ther heritag, there gwdis to dewide,
Ye, wnder whome that he moſt nedis ſtond,
At correccioune ſal ſtrek his mychty hond,
Not euery day, bot ſhal at onys fall
On hyme, mayhap, and his ſucceſcione all.
In this, allace! the blyndis of the kingis,
And Is the fall of princis and of Rygnis.
The moſt wertew, the gret Intellegens,
The bleſſit tokyne of wyſdom and prudens
Iſ, in o king, for to reſtren his honde
Frome his pupleis Riches & ther lond.
Mot euery king have this wice in mynd
In tyme, and not when that he ned fynde!
And in thi larges beith war, I pray,
Of nedful tyme, for than is beſt alway.
Awyſ the ek quhome to that thow ſalt if,
Of there fam, and ek how that thei leif;
And of the wertws and wicious folk alſo,
I the beſeich dewidith well thir two,
So that thei ſtond nocht in[to] o degree;
Diſcreccioune ſall mak the diuerſitee,
Wich clepith the moder of al vertewis.
And beith war, I the beſeich of this,
That is to ſay of flatry, wich that longith
To court, and al the kingis larges fongith.
The vertuouſ man no thing thar-of reſauith,
The flattereris now ſo the king diſſauith
And blyndith them that wot no thing, I-wyſ,
When thei do well, or quhen thei do o myſ;
And latith kingis oft til wnderſtonde
Thar vicis, and ek ye faltis of ther lond.

and if he oppresses them whom he should rule,

God shall stretch His mighty hand for correction.

Herein, alas! is the blindness of kings.

The blessed token of a king's wisdom is for him to restrain his hand from his people's riches.

(2) Choose a *fitting time*.
(3) Take care *to whom* you give.

Let not the virtuous and the vicious stand in the same degree.

Beware of flattery.

In to the realme about o king Is holde
O flatterere were than is the ſtormys cold,
Or peſtelens, and mor the realme anoyith ;
For he the law and puple boith diſtroyith.
And in to principall ben ther three thing*is*,
That cauſſith flattereris ſtonding *with* the king*is* ;
And on, It is the blyndit Ignorans
Of king*is*, wich that hath no gou*er*nans
To wnd*er*ſtond who doith ſich o myſ ;
But who that fareſt ſchewith hym, I-wyſ,
Moſt ſuffiſith and beſt to his pleſans.
Wo to the realme that havith ſich o chans !
And ſecundly, quhar that o king Is
Weciuſ hyme-ſelf, he cheriſſith, ywys,
Al them the wich that one to vicis ſoundith,
Whar-throw that vicis and flattery ek aboundith.
The thrid, is the ilk ſchrewit harrmful wice,
Wich makith o king *with*in hyme-ſelf ſo nyce,
That al thar flattry and ther gilt he knowith
In to his wit, and ȝhit he hyme *with*-drowith
Them to repref, and of ther vicis he wot ;
And this It is wich that diſſemblyng hot,
That in no way accordith for o king.
Is he not ſet abuf apone his Ri*n*gne,
As ſou*er*ane his puple for to lede ?
Whi ſchuld he ſpare, or quhom of ſchuld he dred
To ſay the treuth, as he of Right is hold ?
And if ſo ware that al the king*is* wold,
When that his leg*is* comytit ony wyce,
As beith not to ſchamful, nore to nyce,
That thei preſume that he is negligent,
But als far as he thinkith that thei myſ-went,
But diſſemblyng reprewith as afferis ;
And pwnice them quhar pwnyſing Requeris,
Sauf only m*er*cy in the tyme of ned.
And ſo o king he ſchuld his puple led,

A flatterer is worse than a storm or a pestilence.

[Fol. 24 *b*.]

Three things make flatterers in favour.

First, the blind ignorance of kings.

Secondly, where a king is vicious himself.

Thirdly, where the king is so foolish, that he knows their flattery, yet withdraws from reproving them.

Why should a king spare to say the truth ?

He should reprove without dissembling, as it is fitting.

That no treſpaß, that cu*m*myth in his way,
Shuld paß his hond wne-pwniſt away;
Nore no good deid in to the ſamyn degree,
Nore no wertew, ſuld wn-Reuardid bee.

Then flattery, that now is high, should be low.

Than flattry ſhuld, that now is he, be low,
And wice from the king*is* court w*ith*-drow;
His miniſter*is* that ſhuld the Iuſtice reull,
Shuld kep well furt*h* of quiet & reull,
That now, god wat, as It conſerwit Is,
The ſtere is loft, and al is gon amys;
[Fol. 25 *a*.] And vertew ſhuld hame to the court hyme dreß,
That exillith goith in to the wilder*n*es.

If a king thus stood like his own degree, his people would be virtuous and wise.

Thus if o king ſtud lyk his awn degree,
Wertwis and wyß than ſhuld his puple bee,
Only ſet by vertew hyme to pleß,
And ſore adred his wiſdom to diſpleß.
And if that he towart the vicis draw,
His folk ſall go on to that ilk law;
What ſhal hyme pleß that wil noc*h*t ell*is* fynd,
Bot ther-apon ſetith al ther mynde.

Thus the rule of his people and kingdom standeth only in the king's virtue.

Thus only in the wertew of o king
The reull ſtant of his puple & his ringne,
If he be wyß and, but diſſemblyng, ſchewis,
As I have ſaid, the vicis one to ſchrewis.
And ſo thus, *ſir*, It ſtant apone thi will
For to omend thi puple, or to ſpill;
Or have thi court of vertewis folk, or fullis;

Since thou art wholly master of the schools, teach them, and they shall gladly learn."

Sen yow art holl maiſt*er* of the ſcoullis
Teichith them, and thei ſal gladly leir,
That is to ſay, that thei may no thing heir[1]
Sauf only wertew towart thyn eſtat;
And cheriß them that wertews ben algait.
And thinkith what that wertew is to thee;
It pleſſith god, vphaldith thi degree."

[1] Or, "leir." MS. apparently has "leir," corrected to "heir."

"Maiſter," quod he, "me think rycht profitable
Yowr conſeell Is, and wonder honorable
For me, and good; rycht well I have conſauit,
And in myne hartis Inwartneſs reſauit.
I ſhal fulfill and do yowr ordynans
Als far of wit as I have ſuffiſans;
Bot y beſeich yow, in til hartly wyſs,
That of my drem ȝhe ſo to me dewyſs,
The wich ſo long haith occupeid my mynd,
How that I ſhal no maner ſucour fynd
Bot only throw the wattir lyon, & ſyne
The leich that is withouten medyſyne;
And of the conſell of the flour; wich ayre
Wonderis lyk that no man can duclar."

"Now, ſir," quod he, "and I of them al thre,
What thei betakyne ſhal I ſchaw to the,
Such as the clerkis at them ſpecifiit;
Thei vſit no thing what thei ſignefiit.
The wattir lyone Is the god werray,
God to the lyone is lyknyt many way;
But thei have hyme In to the wattir ſeñ,
Confuſit were ther wittis al, y weñ;
The wattir was ther awn fragelitee,
And thar treſpas, and thar Inequitee
In to this world, the wich thei ſtond y-cloſit;
That was the wattir wich thei have ſuppoſit,
That haith there knowlag maad ſo Inperfyt;
Thar ſyne & ek ther worldis gret delyt,
As clowdy wattir, was euermore betweñ,
That thei the lyone perfitly hath nocht ſeñ;
Bot as the wattir, wich was yer awn ſynne,
That euermor thei ſtond confuſit In.
If thei haith ſtond in to religioñ clen,
Thei had the lyone Not in watter ſen,
Bot clerly vp in to the hewyne abuf,
Eternaly whar he ſhal not remufe.

Arthur considers his counsel profitable.

He beseeches him to expound his dream,

how he shall only find help through the water-lion, the leech, and the flower.

The master's explanation. [Fol. 25 b.]

The water-lion is the very God.

The water is men's fragility;

whereby they see not the lion perfectly.

Had men been always religious, they had seen the lion not in water, but clearly.

And eu*er*more in vatt*er* of ſyne vas hee,
For-quhi It is Impoſſeble for to bee ;[1]
The world is enclosed in the darkness of their sin.
And thus the world, wich that thei ar In,
Y-cloſit Is in dyrknes of ther ſyne ;
And ek the thikneſ of the air betwen
The lyone mad in vattir to be ſen.
For It was no*cht* bot ſtrenth of ther clergy
Wich thei have here, and It is bot erthly,
That makith them there reſou*n*s dewyſ,
And ſe the lyone thus in erthly wyſ.
The lion is God's Son, Jesu Christ.
This is the lyone, god, and goddis sone,
Ihe*s*u criſt, wich ay in hewyne ſal won*ne*.
For as the lyone of euery beſt is king,
So is he lord and maiſt*er* of al thing,
That of the bleſſit vyrgyne vas y-bore.
Ful many a natur the lyone haith, qũhar-fore
That he to god reſemblyt is, bot I
Lyk not mo at this tyme ſpecify.
This is the lyone, thar-of have yow no dred,
That ſhal the help and comfort In thi ned.
The ſentens here now woll I the defyne
The leech without medicine is also God.
Of hyme, the lech w*ith*outen medyſyne,
Wich is the god that euery thing hath vroght.
[Fol. 26 *a*.]
For yow may know that vther Is It noght,
Not as surgeons,
As ſurgynis and feſicianis, wich that delith
W*ith* mortell thing*is*, and mortell thing*is* helyth,
whose art is in medicine,
And al thar art is in to medyſyne,
As it is ordanit be the my*cht* dewyne,
and in plaisters, drinks, and various anointments; who know the quality of the year, and the disposition of the planets.
As plaſte*r*is, drink*is*, and anouy*n*tme*n*t*is*[2] feir,
And of the qualyte watyng of the yher ;
And of the planet*is* diſpoſicioun*e*,
And of the naturis of compleccyoune,
And in the diu*er*ſ changing of hwmowr*is*.
Thus wnd*er* reull lyith al there cwris ;

[1] "see" (?). [2] MS. "anoñytmẽt*is*," or "anoũytmẽt*is*."

And yhit thei far as blynd man In the way,
Oft quhen that deith thar craft lift to affay.
Bot god, the wich that is the foueran lech,
Nedith no maner medyfyne to fech ;
For ther is no Infyrmyte, nore wound,
Bot as hyme lykith al is holl and found.
So can he heill Infyrmytee of thoght,
Wich that one erdly medefyne can noght ;
And als the faul that to confufioune goith,
And haith with hyme and vther parteis boith,
His dedly wound god helyth frome the ground ;
On to his cure no medyfyne is found.
This Is his mycht that neuer more fhall fyne,
This is the leich without medyfyne ;
And If that yhow at confeffioune hath ben
And makith the of al thi fynnis clen,
Yow art than holl, and this ilk famyn is he
Schall be thi leich In al neceffitee.

Now of the flour y woll to the difcern :
This is the flour that haith[1] the froyt etern,
This is the flour, this fadith for no fchour,
This is the flour of euery flouris floure ;
This is the flour, of quhom the froyt vas born,
This ws redemyt efter that we war lorn ;
This Is the flour that euer fpryngith new,
This is the flour that changith neuer hew ;
This is the vyrgyne, this is the bleffit flour
That Ihesu bur that is our salweour,
This flour wnwemmyt of hir wirginitee ;
This is the flour of our felicitee,
This is the flour to quhom ve fhuld exort,
This is the flour not feffith to fupport
In prayere, confell, and in byffynes,
Vs catifis ay In to our wrechitnes

But God can heal infirmity of thought,

and also the soul that goeth to confusion.

He shall be thy leech in all necessity.

The flower is she of whom the eternal fruit was born,

the virgin that bore the Saviour,

that ceaseth not to support us caitiffs,

[Fol. 26 b.]

[1] The word, though indistinct, is almost certainly "haith." Stevenson has "high ;" but this gives no sense.

On to hir sone, the quich hir confell herith;
This is the flour that al our gladneß fterith,
through whose prayer are many saved. Throuch whois prayer mony one is fawit,
That to the deth et*er*naly war refawit,
Ne war hir hartly fuplicatioune.
This is the flour of our faluatioune,
Next hir sone, the froyt of euery flour;
This is the fam that fhal be thi fuccour,
If that the lykith hartly Reue*r*ans
And fe*r*uice ȝeld one to hir excellens,
Syne worfchip hir *with* al thi byffyneß;
Sche fal thi harm, fche fall thi ned redreß.
She shall so counsel the lion and the leech, that thou need not despair. Sche fall fice confell if one to the two,
The lyone and the foue*r*ane lech alfo,
Yow fall not Ned yi dreꝫ for to difpar,
Nor ȝhit no thing that is in thi contrare.
Now—q*uo*d the maifte*r*—yow may well wnde*r*ftand
Tueching thi drem as I have born on hande;
And planly haith the mat*er* al declarith,
That yhow may know of wich yow was difparith.
The lech, the lyone, and the flour alfo,
Yow worfchip them, yow ferve them eue*r*mo;
And ples the world as I have faid before;
In goue*r*nans thus ftondith al thi glore.
Do now as thou list, for all is in thy hand. Do as yow lift, for al is in thi honde,
To tyne thi-felf, thi honore, and thi londe,
Or lyk o prince, o *con*querour, or king,
In honore and in worfchip for to Ringe."
The king replies, "Now," q*uod* the king, "I fell that the fupport
Of yhour confell haith don me fich comfort,
that his heart is eased from fear; Of euery raddour my hart is In to eß,
To ȝhour *com*mand, god will, y fal obeß.
Bot o thing is yneuch wn to me,
but inquires if Galiot will win over the red knight, and what is his name, How galiot makith his awant that he
Shall have the kny*ch*t, that only by his honde
And manhed, was defendour of my londe;

If that ſhall fall y pray yhow tellith me,
And quhat he hecht, and of quhat lond is hee?"
"What that he hecht yow ſhall no fory*er* know,
His dedis ſall her-eft*er*wart hyme ſchaw;
Bot *con*trar the he ſhall be found no way.
No more thar-of as now y will the ſay." [1]
With that the king haith at his maiſtir tone
His leve, one to to his cuntre for to goñe;
And al the oft makith none abyde,
To paſſing home anone thei can p*ro*wid;
And to ſ*ir* gawane thei haith o lytt*er* maad,
Ful ſore ywound, and hyme on w*ith* them haade.
[T]he king, as that the ſtory can declar,
Paſſith to o Cete that was Right fair,
And clepit cardole, In to walis, was,
For that tyme than It was the n*er*eſt place,
And thar he ſoiornyt xxiiijti days
In ryall feſting, as the auttore ſays.
So diſcretly his puple he haith cherit,
That he thar hartis holy haith *con*querit.
And ſ*ir* gawan, helyt holl and ſound
Be xv dais he was of euery wounde;
Right blyt*h* therof in to the court war thei.
And ſo befell, the xxiiij[2] day,
The king to fall in to o hewynes,
Right ate his table ſiting at the meſ;
And ſ*ir* gawan cu*m*myth hyme before,
And ſaid hyme, "ſ*ir*, yhour thoght is al to ſore,
Conſid*er*ing the diu*er*ſ knyc*ht*is ſere
Ar of wncouth and ſtrang land*is* here."
The king anſuert, as in to matalent,
"S*ir*, of my thoc*ht*, or ȝhit of myne entent,
Yhe have the wrang me to repref, for-quhy
Thar lewith none that ſhuld me blam, for I

The master evades reply.

[Fol. 27 *a*.]

The king and the host return home.

The king sojourns twenty-four days at Cardole, in Wales.

Sir Gawan is healed in fifteen days.

The king becomes mournful, as he sits at the mess.

Gawan rebukes him.

The king answers in "matalent,"

[1] At the bottom of the page is the catch-word, "With that the king." [2] MS. "xxviij," altered to "xxiiij."

that he was thinking of the worthiest knight living;

Was thinkand one the worthieſt that lewyt,
That al the worſchip In to armys prewyt;
And how the thonk of my defens he had,
And of the wow that galiot haith mad.
But I have ſen, when that of my houſhold
Thar was, and of my falowſchip, that wold,
If that thei wiſt, quhat thing ſhuld me pleſ,
Thei wald nocht leif for trawell nor for eſ.
And ſum tyme It prefwmyt was & ſaid,

that he once had the flower of knighthood in his household, but now this flower is away.

That in my houſhold of al this world I had
The flour of knychthed and of chevalry;
Bot now thar-of y ſe the contrarye,
Sen that the flour of knychthed is away."

"Schir," quod he, "of Reſone ſuth yhe ſay;

[Fol. 27 b.]

And if god will, In al this warld ſo Round
He ſal be ſoght, if that he may be found."

Gawan departs to seek Lancelot.

Than gawan goith with o knychtly chere,
At the hal dure he ſaith In this maner:
"In this paſag who lykith for to wend?
It is o Iorne moſt for to comend
That In my tyme In to the court fallith,
To knyghtis wich that chewellry lowith
Or trawell In to armys for to hant;
And lat no knycht fra thyne-furth hyme awant
That it denyith;"—with that onon thei roſ,

All the knights rise to go with him.

Al the knychtis, and frome the burdis goſ.
The king that ſauch In to his hart was wo,

Arthur reproves him.

And ſaid, "ſir gawan, nece, why dois yow ſo?
Knowis yow nocht I myne houſhold ſuld encreſ,
In knychthed, and in honore, and largeſ?
And now yow thinkith mak me diſſolat
Of knychtis, and my houſ tranſulat,
To ſek o knycht, and It was neuer more
Hard ſich o ſemble makith o before."

Gawan explains.

"Sir," quod he, "als few as may yhow pleſ;
For what I said was no thing for myne eſ,

Nor for deſir of faloufchip, for-why
To paſ alone, but cumpany, think I;
And ilk knyc*h*t to paſ o fundry way;
The mo thei paſ the fewar eſchef thay,
Bot thus ſhal pas no mo bot as yhow leſt."
"Takith," q*uod* he, "of quhom ȝhe lykith beſt,
Fourty in this paſag for to go;"
At this *com*mand and gawan cheſit ſo
Fourty, quhich that he louit, & that was
Richt glaid in to his falowſchip to pas.
[A]nd furth thei go, and al anarmyt thei
Come to the king, w*ith*outen more delay,
The relyk*is* broc*h*t, as was the man*er* tho,
When any knyght*is* frome the court ſuld go.
Or when the paſſit, or quhen thei com, thei ſwor
The trouth to ſchaw of euery aduentur.
S*ir* gawan knelyng to his falowis ſais,
"Yhe lord*is*, wich that in this ſeking gais,
So many noble and worthi knyc*h*t*is* ar ȝhe,
Me think in wayne yhour tr*a*uel ſhuld noc*h*t be,
For aduentur is non so gret to preſ,
As I ſuppone, nor ȝhe ſal It eſſchef,
And if ȝhe lyk as I that ſhal dewyſ,
Yhour oth to ſwer In to the ſamyne wyſ
Myne oith to kep;"—and that thei vnde*r*tak,
How eue*r* ſo that he his oith mak
It to conſerf, and that thei have all ſworn̄.
Than gawan, wich that was the king beforn,
On kneis ſwore, "I ſal the ſuth duclar
Of euery thing when I agan Repar,
Nor neue*r* more aȝhane ſal I return̄,
Nore in o place long for to ſuiorn̄
Whill that the knyc*h*t or verray evydens
I have, that ſhal be toknis of credens."
His faloufchip abaſit of that thing,
And als therof anoyt was the king,

Arthur assigns him forty companions.

These knights arm themselves,

and bring the relics, whereon to swear to shew the truth.

[Fol. 28 *a*.]

Gawane swears not to return till he has found Lancelot, or evidence of him.

Arthur reproves him for forgetting the coming day of battle.

Sayng, "Nece, yow haith al foly vroght
And wilfulneſs, that haith nocht in thi thoght
The day of batell of galot and me."

Gawane says it must be so.

Quod gawan, "Now non other ways ma be."

Gawane and his fellows lace their helmes, and take their leave.

Thar-*with* he and his falowſchip alſo
Thar halmys laſit, on to ther horſ thei go,
Syne tuk ther lef, and frome the court the fare,
Thar names ware to long for to declar.
Now ſal we leif hyme and *his* cumpany,
That in thar ſeking paſſith biſſely;

The story returns to the lady of Melyhalt.

And of the lady of melyhalt we tell,
With whome the knycht mot ned alway duell.
[1][O] day ſhe mayd hyme on to *hir* preſens fet,
And on o ſege be-ſid hir haith hyme ſet,
"*Sir*, in keping I have yow halding long,"
And thus ſche ſaid, "for gret treſpas & wrong,
Magre my ſtewart, in worſchip, and for-thi
ȝhe ſuld me thonk;"—"madem," q*uod* he, "and I
Thonk yhow ſo that e*uer*, at my mycht,
Whar-ſo I paſ that I ſal be yhour knycht."

She inquires Lancelot's name.

"Grant mercy, *ſir*, bot o thing I ȝow pray,
What that ȝhe ar ȝhe wold *wich*ſauf to ſay."

He refuses to tell.

"Madem," q*uod* he, "yhour mercy aſk I, quhy
That for to ſay apone no wyſ may I."
"No! wil ȝhe not? non oy*er* ways as now

She vows to keep him in thrall till the day of combat;

ȝhe ſal repent, and ek I mak awow
One to the thing the wich that I beſt love,
[Fol. 28 *b*.] Out frome my keping ſal ȝhe not Remuf
Befor the day of the aſſemblee,
Wich that, o ȝher, is ne*reſt* for to bee;
And if that ȝow haith pleſſit for to ſay,
ȝhe had fore me deliue*rit* ben this day;

and to go to the court to try and learn it.

And I ſal knaw, quhey*er* ȝhe wil or no,
For I furt*h*-*with* one to the court ſal go,

[1] Room is here left in the MS. for an illuminated letter, and a small "o" inserted as a note.

Whar that al thithing*is* goith & cu*m*yth ſoñ."
"Madem," q*uod* he, "yhour pleſance mot be doñe." 2280
W*ith* that the kny*cht* one to his chalm*er* goith,
And the lady hir makith to be wroith
A3anis hyme, but futhly vas ſche not,
For he al-out was mor in to hir thoght. 2284
Than ſchapith ſhe a3ane the ferd day,
And richly ſche gan hir-ſelf aray;
Syne clepit haith apone her cuſynes,
And ſaith, "y will one to the court me dreſ; 2288
And malice I have ſchawin on to 3hon kny*cht*,
For-quhy he wold no*cht* ſchew me quhat he hicht,
Bot ſo, I-wyſ, It is no*cht* in my tho*cht*,
For worthyar non In to this erth is wro*cht*. 2292
Tharfor I pray, and hartly I requer
3he mak hyme al the cu*m*pany and chere,
And do hyme al the worſchip and the eſ,
Excep his honore, wich that may hym pleſ; 2296
And quhen I cum deliu*er*ith hyme als fre
As he is now;"—"ne have no dred," q*uod* ſche.
[T]he lady p*ar*tit, and hir lef hath ton,
And by hir Iorne to the court Is gon. 2300
The king hapnit at logris for to bee,
Wich of his realme was than the chef cete;
And haith hir met, and In til hartly wyſ
Reſauit her, and welcu*m*myt oft-fyſ; 2304
And haith hir home one to his palice bro*cht*,
Whar that no dante nedith to be ſocht,
And maid hir cher w*ith* al his ful entent.
Eft fupir one to o chalm*er* ar thei went, 2308
The king and ſche, and ek the quen al thre;
Of hir tithand*is* at hir than aſkit hee,
And what that hir one to the court had bro*cht*?
"S*ir*," q*uod* ſche, "I come[1] not al for no*cht*; 2312

The knight retires.

Before going to the court,

she prays her cousin to take care of him.

The lady meets Arthur at Logris;

who brings her home to his palace;

and inquires what has brought her.

[1] MS. "conne."

She says she has a friend who has made a challenge, [Fol. 29 *a*.]

I have o frend haith o dereyne ydoo,
And I can fynd none able kny*ch*t tharto;
For he the wich that in the *con*trar Is
Is hardy, ſtrong, and of gret kyne, I-wyſ;
Bot, It is ſaid, If I my*ch*t have *with* me
3our kny*ch*t, quich in the last aſſemble
Was in the feld, and the red armys bur,
In his manhed y my*ch*t my cauſ affur;
And yhow, *ſir*, richt hartly I exort
In to this ned my myſt*er* to ſupport."

which the red knight could best maintain.

"Madem, by faith one to the quen I aw
That I beſt loue, the kny*ch*t I neu*er* ſaw
In nerneſ by which that I hyme knew;
And ek gawane Is gan hyme for to ſew
With other fourty kny*ch*t*is* In to cumpany."
The lady ſmylit at ther fanteſſy;
The quen thar-*with* *pre*ſumyt wel that ſche
Knew quhat he was, and ſaid, "madem, If 3he
Knowith of hyme what that he is, or quhar,
We 3how beſech til ws for to declar."

Arthur replies that Gawane is gone to seek him.

The queen asks the lady if she knows where he is.

"Madem," q*uod* ſche, "now be the faith that I
Aw to the king and yhow, as for no why
To court I cam, but of hyme to Inquere;
And ſen of hyme I can no tithing*is* here,
Nedlyng*is* to-morn homwart mon I fair."

She replies no, and proposes to return.

"Na," q*uod* the king, "madem, our ſon It waire;
3he ſal remayne her for the qwenys ſak;
Syne ſhal 3he of our beſt kny*ch*t*is* tak."
"Sir," q*uod* ſche, "I pray 3ow me excuſ,
For-quhy to paſ nedis me behuſ;
Nor, ſen I want the kny*ch*t which I have ſo*ch*t,
Wtheris *with* me to have deſir I no*ch*t,
For I of otheris have that may ſuffice."
Bot 3hit the king hir prayt on ſich wyſ,
That ſche remanit whill the thrid day;
Syne tuk hir leif to paſing hom hir way.

Arthur prays her to stay.

She remains till the third day.

It nedis not the feſting to declar
Maid one to hir, nor company nor fare;
Sche had no knyc*h*t, ſche had no damyſeill,
Nor thei richly rewardit war and well.
Now goith the lady homwart, and ſche
In her entent deſyrus Is to ſee
The flour of knyc*h*thed and of chevelry;
So was he pryſit and hold to euery wy.
The lady, which one to hir palace come,
Bot of ſchort time remanith haith at home
When ſche gart bryng, w*ith*outen Recidens,
W*ith* grete effere this knyc*h*t to hir p*rese*ns,
And ſaid hyme; "ſ*ir*, ſo mekil have I ſoc*h*t
And knowith that be-for I knew noc*h*t,
That If yhow lyk I wil yhour Ransone mak."
"Madem, gladly, wil ȝhe wichſauf to tak
Eft*er* that as my powar may atteñ,
Or that I may p*ro*wid be ony meñ."
"Now, ſ*ir*," ſho ſaid, "forſut*h* It ſal be so,
Yhe ſal have thre, and cheſ yhow on of tho;
And if yhow lykith them for to refuſ,
I can no mor, but ȝhe ſal me excuſ,
Yhe ned*is* mot fuſten yhour aduentur
Contynualy In ward for til endur."
"Madem," q*uod* he, "and I yhow hartly pray,
What that thei ſay[1] ȝhe wald w*ich*ſauf to ſay?"
"[T]he firſt," q*uod* ſche, "who hath in to the cheñ
Of low yhour hart, and if ȝhe may dereñ?
The next, yhour nam, the which ȝe ſal not lye?
The thrid, if eu*er* ȝhe think of cheualry
So mekil worſchip to atten in feild
Apone o day in armys wnd*er* ſcheld,
As yat ȝhe dyd the ſamyne day, when ȝhe
In red armys was at the aſſemblee?"

She is sumptuously entertained,

and returns home.

[Fol. 29 *b*.]

Soon after, she sends for Lancelot,

and proposes to ransom him,

on one of three conditions.

Either he must tell whom he loves,

or declare his name,

or say if he expects again to equal his former exploits.

[1] So MS. We should probably read "bee."

" Madem," q*uod* he, " is thar non vther way
Me to redem, but only thus to ſay
Of thing*is*, which that Rynyth me to blam,
Me to awant my lady or hir name ?
But If that I moſt ſchawin furth that one,
What su*er*te ſchal I have for to gone
At libertee out of this dange*r* free ? "
" Schir, for to dred no myſte*r* is," q*uod* ſhee ;
" As I am trew and fa*ith*full woman hold,
ȝhe ſal go fre quhen one of thir is told."
" Madem, yhour will non vther ways I may,
He refuses to tell his lady's name, I mone obey ; and to the firſt y ſay,
[1][I]s, to declar the lady of myne hart,
My goſt ſal rather of my breſt aftart "—
Whar-by the lady fayndit al for no*ch*t
The lowe quhich long hath ben In to h*is* tho*ch*t—
or his own ; " And of my nam, ſchortly for to ſay,
It ſtondith ſo that one no wyſ I may.
[Fol. 30 *a*.] Bot of the thrid, madem, I ſe that I
Mon ſay the thing that tuechith velany ;
but declares that he trusts to do more than ever before ; and requires his liberty. For ſut*h* it is I traſt, and god before,
In feld that I ſal do of armys more
Than eu*er* I did, if I *com*mandit bee.
And now, madem, I have my libertee,
For I have ſaid I neu*er* tho*ch*t to ſay."
" Now, ſ*ir*," q*uod* ſche, " when-eu*er* ȝhe wil ye may ;
She begs of him a boon ; Bot o thing Is, I yhow hartly raquer,
Sen I have hold yhow apone ſuch maner
Not as my fo, that ȝhe vald grant me till.
" Madem," q*uod* he, " It ſal be as ȝhe will."
" Now, ſ*ir*," q*uod* ſche, " it is no thing bot ȝhe
that he will remain with her till the day of battle ; Remañ w*ith* ws wn to the aſſemble,
And euery thyng that In yhour myſte*r* lyis
I ſall gar ordan at yhour awn dewyſ ;

[1] A space is here left for an illuminated letter.

And of the day I ſhall yow *cer*tefy
Of the aſſemble ȝhe ſal not pas therby."
" Madem," q*uod* he, " It ſal be as yhow lift."
" Now, ſ*ir*," q*uod* ſche, " and than I hald It beſt,
That ȝhe remañ lyk to the ſamyne dogre
As that ȝhe war, yat non ſal wit that ȝhe
Deliu*er*it war ; and in to ſacret wyſ
Thus may ȝhe be ; and now yhe ſal dewyſ
What armys that yhow lykyth I gar mak."
" Madem," q*uod* he, " armys al of blak."
W*ith* this, this kny*cht* is to his chalm*er* goñ ;
The lady gan ful prewaly diſſpone
For al that longith to the kny*cht*, in feild ;
Al blak his horſ, his armour, and his ſcheld,
That nedful is, al thing ſche well p*re*widith ;
And in hir keping thus w*ith* hir he bidith.
Suppos of love ſche takyne hath the charg,
Sche bur It clos, ther-of ſche vas not larg,
Bot wyſly ſche abſtenit hir diſſir,
For ell*is* quhat, ſche knew, he was afyre ;
Thar-for hir wit hir worſchip haith defendit,
For in this world thar was nan mor co*m*mendit,
Boith of diſcreccioune and of womanhed,
Of gou*er*nans, of nurtur, and of farhed.
This kny*cht* w*ith* hir thus al this whil mon duell,
And furt*h* of arthur ſumthing wil we tell—
[T]hat walkyng vas furt*h* in to his Regiou*n*is,
And ſoiornyt in his ceteis and his townis,
As he that had of viſdome ſufficyans.
He kepit the lore of maiſt*er* amytans
In ryghtwyſnes, In feſting and larges,
In cheriſing cu*m*pany and hamlynes ;
For he was biſſy and was deligent,
And largly he iſſith, and diſpent
Rewardis, boith one to the pur & riche,
And holdith feſt throw al the ȝher eliche.

and inquires what arms he would like to have made for him. He chooses black armour,

which is provided.

She keeps her love close,

being commended for discretion.

The story returns to Arthur—

[Fol. 30 *b*.]

who obeys the counsel of Amytans,

and gives away largely ;

In al the warld paſſing gan his name,
He chargit not bot of encreſ and fame,
And how his puples hartis to empleſ;
Thar gladnes ay was to his hart moſt eſ.
He rakith not of riches nor treſſour,
Bot to diſpend one worſchip & honour;
He iſith riches, he iſith lond and rent,
He cheriſſyth them with wordis eloquent,
and thus gains his people's love. So that thei can them vtraly propone
In his ferviice thar lyves to diſpone:
So gladith theme his homely contynans,
His cheriſyng, his wordis of pleſans,
His cumpany, and ek his mery chere,
His gret rewardis, and his iftis fere.
Thus hath the king non vthir beſynes
Bot cheriſing of knychtis and largeſ,
To mak hyme-ſelf of honour be commend;
And thus the ȝher he drywith to the ende.

EXPLICIT SECUNDA PARS, INCIPIT TERCIA PARS.

[BOOK III.]

The long dirk pafag[1] of the vinter, & the lycht
Of phebus comprochit with his mycht;
The which, afcending In his altitud,
Awodith saturñ with his ftormys Rude;
The foft dew one fra the hewyne doune valis[2]
Apone the erth, one hillis and on valis,
And throw the fobir & the mwft hwmouris
Vp nurifit ar the erbis, and in the flouris
Natur the erth of many diuerß hew
Our-fret, and cled with the tendir new.
The birdis may them hiding in the grawis
Wel frome the halk, that oft ther lyf berevis;
And scilla hie afcending in the ayre,
That euery vight may heryng hir declar
Of the feffone the paffing luftynes.
This was the tyme that phebus gan hym dreß
In to the rame, and haith his courß bygown,
Or that the trewis and the ȝher vas Rown,
Which was y-fet of galiot and the king
Of thar affemble, and of thar meting.
Arthur haith a xv dais before
Affemblit al his barnag and more
That weryng wnder his fubieccioune,
Or louith hyme, or longith to his crown;
And haith his Iornay tone, withouten let,
On to the place the wich that was y-fet,
Whar he hath found befor hyme mony o knycht
That cummyng war with al thar holl mycht,

The sun ascends in his altitude.

The soft dew falls down from heaven.

Nature decks the earth with various hues. The birds may hide

[Fol. 31 *a*.]

them from the hawk in the groves, and Scilla may ascend in the air.

The time of combat between Galiot and the king drew near.

Arthur goes to the appointed place.

[1] So MS. Should we read "pasith"?
[2] So MS. It should be "falis."

Al enarmyt both *with* ſpere & ſcheld,
And ful of lug*is* plantith haith the feld,
Hyme In the wer for to ſupport and ſerf
At al ther my*cht*, his thonk for to differf.
And gawan, which was in the ſeking ȝhit
Of the gud kny*cht*, of hyme haith got no wit,

Gawane remembers the day,

Remembrith hyme apone the king*is* day,
And to his falowis one this wys can ſay:
"To ȝhow is knowin the mat*er*, in what wyſ
How that the king hath *with* his e*n*nemys
A *cer*tan day, that now comprochit nere,
And one to ws war hewynes to here
That he var in to p*er*ell or in to dreid,
And we away and he of ws haith neid;
For we but hyme no thing may eſchef,
And he but ws in honore well may lef;
For, be he loſt, we may no thing *with*ſtond,
Our-ſelf, our honore we tyne, & ek *our* lond.

and proposes to his fellows to go to help the king.

Tharfor, I red we pas on to the king,
Suppos our oth It hurt in to ſum thing,
And in the feld *with* hyme for til endur,
Of lyf or deth and tak our aduentur."
Thar-to thei ar conſentit eue*r*ilkon,
And but dulay the have thar Iorney toñe.

[Fol. 31 b.]

When that the king them ſaw, in h*is* entent

Arthur is well content at their coming,

Was of thar com Right wond*er* well *con*tent;
For he *pre*ſwmyt no thing that thei wold

not expecting them.

Have cu*m*myne, but one furt*h* to y*er* ſeking hold.
And thus the kinghis oft aſſemblit has
Aȝane the tyme, aȝaine the day that vas
Y-ſtatut and ordanit for to bee,
And euery thing hath ſet in the dogre.
[A]nd galiot, that haith no thing forȝhet
The termys quhich that he befor had set,

Galiot also assembles his folk,

Aſſemblit has, apone his beſt maner,
His folk, and al his other thing*is* fere,

That to o weryour longith to prouid,
And is y-come apone the tothir ſyde.
Whar he befor was one than vas he two,
And al his vthir artilȝery also
He dowblith hath, that merwell was to ſeñ;
And by the rewere lychtit one the greñ,
And ſtronghar thane ony wallit toune
His oft y-bout ycloſit in Randoune.
Thus war thei cummyne apone ather ſyd
Be-for the tyme, them-ſelf for to prowid.
Or that the trewis was complet & rwn,
Men mycht have ſen one euery ſid begwn
Many a fair and knychtly Iuperty
Of luſty men, and of ȝong chevalry,
Diſyrus In to armys for to pruf;
Sum for wynyng, ſum cauſith vas for luf,
Sum In to worſchip to be exaltate,
Sum cauſit was of wordis he & hate,
That lykit not ydill for to ben;
A hundereth pair at onis one the gren.
Thir luſty folk thus can thar tyme diſpend,
Whill that the trewis goith to the ende.
The trewis paſt, the day is cummyne onoñe,
One euery ſyd the can them to diſpone;
And thai that war moſt ſacret & moſt dere
To galiot, at hyme the can enquere,
"Who ſal aſſemble one yhour ſyd to-morñe?
To-nycht the trewis to the end is worne."
He anſuerit, "As yhit one to this were
I ame awyſit I wil none armys bere,
Bot If It ſtond of more Neceſſitee;
Nor to the feld will pas, bot for to ſee
Yhone knycht, the which that berith ſich o fame."
Than clepit he the conquest king be name,
And hyme commandit xxx thouſand tak
Aȝaine the morne, and for the feld hyme mak.

doubling his army and artillery;

and pitches on the green by the river.

Before the truce is ended,

many combats are seen between lusty men;

a hundred pair at once.

The truce past,

Galiot's friends inquire who shall fight on his side on the morrow.

[Fol. 32 a.]

He commands the first-conquest king to take 30,000 men.

And gawane haith, apone the toyer syde,
Conſulit his Eme he ſchuld for them prowid,
And that he ſchuld none armys to hyme tak
Whill[1] galiot will for the feld hyme mak.
"I grant," quod [he[2]], "wharfor ȝhe mone diſpone
Gawane leads Arthur's forces. Yhow to the feld with al my folk to-morne,
And thinkith in yhoůr manhed and curage
For to reciſt ȝhone folkis gret owtrag."
The day comes. [T]he nycht is gone, vp goith the morow gray,
The brycht ſone ſo cherith al the day:
The knychtis gone to armys than, in haſt;
One goith the ſcheildis and the helmys laſt;
Arthur's men cross the ford. Arthuris oft out our the furrde thai ryd.
And thai agane, apone the toyer syd,
Galiot's men assemble in a vale. Aſſemblit ar apone o luſty greyne,
In to o waill, whar ſone thar mycht be ſeyne
Of knychtis to-gedder many o pair
In to the feld aſſemblyng her & thair,
And ſtedis which that haith thar maſter lorne;[3]
The knychtis war done to the erth doune borne.
Sir Esquyris, a manly knight, Sir eſquyris, which was o manly knycht
In to hyme-ſelf, and hardy vas & wycht;
And in till armys gretly for to pryſ,
ȝhit he was pure, he prewit wel oft-fyſ;
at that time of Galiot's company, And that tyme was he of the cumpanee
Of galiot, bot efterwart was hee
With arthur; and that day In to the feild
He come, al armyt boith with ſpere and ſcheld,
With ferſ deſir, as he that had na dout,
attacks a band, And is aſſemblit ewyne apone a rowt;
His ſpere is gone, the knycht goith to the erd,
And out onon he pullith haith o ſwerd;
and proves his manhood. That day In armys prewit he rycht well
His ſtrenth, his manhed; arthuris folk thai fell.

[1] MS. "Wihill." [2] Omitted in MS.
[3] MS. has "borne." We should read "lorne," as in line 2092

Than galys gwynans, *with* o manly hart,
Which broy*er* was of ywane the baſtart,
He cu*m*myne Is onone one to the ſtour.
For *con*quering In armys of honour,
And cownte*r*it *with* eſquyris hath ſo
That [1] horſ and man, al four, to erth thai go;
And ſtill o quhill lying at the ground.
With that o p*ar*t of arthur*is* folk thei found
Till gwyans, and haith hyme ſone reſkewit.
A3anis them til eſquyris thei ſewyt
Of galiot*is* well xxx^ti^ kny*cht*is & mo;
Gwyans goith done, and vthir vij alſo,
The wich war tone & eſqwyris relewit.
Than ywane the anterus, aggrewit,
With kyn*n*ifme*n* one to the melle ſo*cht*.
The hardy kny*cht*is, that one thar worſchip tho*cht*,
Cownte*r*it them In myddis of the ſcheld,
Whar many o kny*cht* was born doñ *in* the feld;
Bot thei wich ware on galiot*is* p*ar*t,
So wnde*r*takand nor of ſo hardy hart
Ne ware thei not as was *in* ye *con*trare.
S*ir* galys gwyans was reſqwyt thare
With his falowis, and eſqwyris don bore.
Thar al the batell*is* cam, *with*outen more,
On ather p*ar*t, and is aſſemblit ſo
Whar fyfty thouſand war thei, & no mo.
In o plane beſyd the gret Riwere
Xxx thouſand one galiot*is* half thei vare;
Of arthuris x thouſand and no mo
Thei ware, and 3hit thai *con*tenit them ſo
And in the feld ſo manly haith born̄,
That of thar fois haith the feld forſworn̄.
The *con*queſt king, wich the p*er*ell knowith,
Ful manly one to the feld he drowith;
The lord S*ir* gawan, coue*r*it *with* h*is* ſcheld,

Than Galys Gwynans, brother of Ywan,

[Fol. 32 b.]

encounters him, and horse and man go all four to earth.

Arthur's folk rescue Gwyans;

thirty knights of Galiot's arrive, and rescue Esquyris.

Next Ywan comes to the *mêlée*.

Galiot's men give way.

Gwyans is again rescued.

50,000 men are assembled.

30,000 on Galiot's side approach the river,

and 10,000 on Arthur's.

Gawane puts the conquest-king to flight.

[1] MS. has "than."

He ruſchit in myddis of the feld,
And haith them ſo in to his com affayt,
That of his manhed ware thei al affrait;
No langer mycht thei contrar hyme endur,
Bot fled, and goith one to diſcumfiture.

Galiot, full of anger and grief, sends out a new band.

And galiot, wich haith the diſcumfit ſen,
Fulfillit ful of anger and of ten,
Incontinent he ſend o new poware,
Whar-with the feldis al our-couerit ware

[Fol. 33 a.]

Of armyt ſtedis both in plait and maill,
With knychtis wich war reddy to aſſaill.

Gawane draws his men together, and shews them comfortable words.

Sir gawan, ſeing al the gret ſuppris
Of fois cummyng In to ſich o wys,
Togiddir al his cumpany he drew,
And confortable wordis to them ſchew;
So at the cummyng of thar ennemys

They receive the foe in manly wise.

Thei them reſauf, in ſo manly wyſ,
That many one felith deithis wound,
And wnder horſ lyith ſobing one the ground.
This vther cummyth in to gret deſir,
Fulfillit ful of matelent and Ire,
So freſchly, with ſo gret o confluens,
Thar ſtrong affay hath don ſich vyolens,
And at thar come arthuris folk ſo led,
That thai war ay abayſit and adred.
Bot gawan, wich that, by this vorldis fame,
Of manhed and of knychthed bur the name,
Haith prewit [hym] well be experiens;
For only In til armys his defens

Gawane encourages his fellows,

Haith maid his falowis tak ſich hardyment,
That manfully thei biding one the bent.
Of his manhed war merwell to raherſ;
The knychtis throw the ſcheldis can he perſ,
That many one thar dethis haith reſauit;
None armour frome his mychty hond them ſauit,

though their foes are three to one;

ȝhit ay for one ther ennemys wor thre.

Long mycht thei nocht endur in ſuch dugree;
The preſs it wos ſo creuell & ſo ſtrong,
In gret anoy and haith continewit longe,
That, magre them, thei nedis moſt abak
The way one to thar lugis for to tak.
Sir gawan thar ſufferith gret myſchef,
And wonderis in his knychthed can he pref;
His faloufchip haith merwell that hym ſaw,
So haith his fois that of his ſuerd ſtud aw.
King arthur, that al this whill beheld
The danger and the perell of the feld,
Sir ywan with o falowſchip he ſende,
Them In that ned to help & to defend,
Qwich fond them In to danger and in were,
And enterit nere In to thar tentis were.
Sir gawan fechtand was one fut At erde,
And no defend, but only in his ſwerde,
Aȝanis them both with ſpere and ſcheld.
Of galowa the knycht goith to the erde.[1]
Thar was the batell furyous and woud[2]
Of armyt knychtis; to the grownde thai ȝhud.
Sir ywane, that was a noble knyght,
He ſchew his ſtrenth, he ſchew thar his gret mycht,
In al his tyme that neuer of before
Off armys, nore of knychthed, did he more:
Sir gawan thar refkewit he of fors,
Magre his fois, and haith hyme ſet one horſs
That frome the firſt conqueſt king he wañ;
Bot ſir gawan ſo ewill was wondit than,
And in the feld ſupprifit was ſo ſore,
That he the werſs thar-of was euermore.
Thar ſchew the lord ſir ywan his curage,
His manhed, & his noble waffolage;
And gawan, in his doing, wald nocht irk;

yet his men are forced to retreat to their tents.

Arthur beholds the peril of the field, and sends Sir Ywan to help them,

[Fol. 33 b.]

who finds Sir Gawane fighting on foot with only his sword.

The battle was furious and wood.

Sir Ywan rescues Sir Gawane,

who was so evilly wounded, that he was the worse thereof evermore.

[1] Read "felde"? [2] MS. "woid," but the "ȝ" is undotted, and is therefore perhaps meant for the first stroke of a "u."

Darkness parts the combatants.

So al the day enduring to the dyrk
Sal them, magre of thar deſyre, *conſtren*
On ayar half fore [to] dep*art* in twen.
And when that gawan of his horſ vas toñ,
The blud out of his noiſ & mouth is goñ,
And largly ſo paſſith euery wounde,

Sir Gawane swoons,

In ſwonyng thore he fell one to the ground:
Than of the puple petee was to here
The lemytable clamour, and the chere;

so that the king despairs of his "niece's" life, and laments over him.

And of the king the ſorow and the care,
That of his nec*is* lyf was in diſſpare.
"Far well," he ſais, "my gladnes, & my delyt,
Apone kny*cht*hed far well myne appetit,
Fare well of manhed al the g*r*et curage,
Yow flour of armys and of vaſſolage,
Gif yow be loſt!"—thus til his tent hyme bro*cht*

The surgeons are sought,

W*ith* wofull hart, and al the ſurry3enis ſocht,
Wich for to cum was reddy at his neid;
Thai fond the lord was of his lyf i*n* dreid,
For wondit was he, and ek wondit ſo,

who found he had two broken ribs, but no mortal wound.

And in his ſyd ware brokyne Ribys two.
Bot no*cht* for-thi the king thai maid beleif
[Fol. 34 *a*.] That at that tyme he ſhuld the deith eſchef.
[O]ff melyhalt the ladyis kny*chtis* were
In to the feld, and can thir tithing*is* here,

The lady of Melyhalt's knights tell her how the battle went,

And home to thar lady ar thai went,
Til hir to ſchewing eft*er* thar entent,
In euery poynt, how that the batell ſtud
Of galiot, and of his multitud;

and how Gawane bare him in the field, and of his wounds.

And how gawan hyme in the feld hath borñ,
Throw quhoys ſwerd ſo many o kny*cht* vas lorñ,
And of the kny*cht*ly wonder*is* that he wro*cht*,
Syne how that he one to his tent vas bro*cht*.
The lady hard, that lowit gawan so,

She weeps for him.

She gan to wep, in to[1] hir hart vas wo.

[1] MS. "in in"; but "in to" is clearly meant.

Thir tythyng*is* one to lancelot ar goñ,
Whar-of that he was wond*er* wo-bygone,
And for the lady haſtely he sent,
And ſche til hyme, at his co*m*mand, Is went:
He ſaluſt hir, and ſaid, "madem, Is trew
Thir tithing*is* I her report of new
Of the aſſemble, and meting of the oſt,
And of ſ*ir* gawan, wich that ſhuld be loſt?
If that be ſwth, adew the flour of armys,
Now neu*er*more recou*er*yt be the harmys!
In hyme was manhed, curteſſy, and trouth,
Beſy trawell In kny*ch*thed, ay but fleuth,
Humilÿte, [and] gentrice, and cwrag;
In hyme thar was no man*er* of outrage.
Allace! kny*ch*t, allace! what ſhal yow ſay?
Yow may complen, yow may bewail the day
As of his deith, and gladſchip aucht to ſes,
Baith menſtraſy and feſting at the des;
For of this lond he was the holl comfort,
In tyme of ned al kny*ch*thed to ſupport!
Allace! madem, and I durſt ſay at ȝhe
Al yhour beheſt not kepit haith to me,
Whar-of that I was in to full belef
Aȝañe this day that I ſchuld have my lef,
And no*ch*t as cowart thus ſchamfully to ly
Excludit in to cage frome chewalry,
Whar othir kny*ch*tis anarmyt on thar ſtedis
Hawnt*is* ther ȝhouthhed in to kny*ch*tly dedis."
"Sir," quod ſche, "I red yhow not diſpleſ,
ȝhe may In tyme her-eft*er* cum at es;
For the thrid day Is ordanit, & ſhal be
Of the oft*is* a new aſſemble,
And I have gart ordan al the gere
That longith to ȝour body for to were,
Boith horſ and armour In the ſamyne wyſ
Of ſable, ewyne aftir ȝhour awn dewyſ;

Lancelot requests to see the lady;

and inquires if Gawane is really likely to die.

He laments over him,

first apostrophizing himself,

and next blaming the lady for not having allowed him to be present in the battle.

[Fol. 34 b.]

She promises he shall go to the next battle,

saying that his sable armour is ready.

And yhe ſal her remayne one to the day ;
Syne may ȝhe paſs, fore well ȝhe knaw the way."
"I will obey, madem, to yhour entent."
With that ſche goith, and to hir reſt is went:
In the morn she takes her leave, to go to the court.
One the morn arly vp ſche roſe
*With*out delay, and to the kny*cht* ſche gois,
And twk hir lef, and ſaid that ſcho vald fare
On to the court, *with*-outen any mare.
He kneels, and thanks her often.
Than knelit he, and thankit hir oft-fys,
That ſche ſo mych hath done hyme of ge*n*triſs,
And hir byhecht eue*r*, at his myght,
To be hir awn trew & ſtedfaſt kny*cht*.
She goes unto the king,
Sche thonkith hyme, and ſyne ſche goith he*r* way
On to the king, *with*-owten more delay,
Whar that *in*[1] honour *with* king & qwen ſche ſall
Ry*cht* thonkfully reſauit be *with*-all.
Eft to ſ*ir* gawan thai hir led, & ſche
Ryght gladly hyme deſyrit for to ſee,
and finds Sir Gawane quite different from what had been told her.
And ſche hyme fond, and ſche was glad tharfore,
All vthir ways than was hir told before.
The lady's cousin cherishes Lancelot in her best manner.
The kny*cht*, the wich in to hir keping vas,
Sche had *com*mandit to hir cuſſynece,
Wich cheriſt hyme apone hir beſt manere,
And comfort hyme, and maid hy*m* ry*cht* gud chere.

[T]he days goith, fo paſſith als the ny*cht*,
The third day, the maiden goes to his chamber, and fastens on his armour.
The thrid morow, as that the ſone vas ly*cht*,
The kny*cht* onon out of his bed aroſe,
The maden ſone one to his chalme*r* goſe,
And ſacretly his armour one hyme ſpent.
He tuk his lef, and ſyne his way he went
He goes to the same green, beside the river, as before.
Ful prewaly, ry*cht* to the ſamyne greñ
One the rewere, whar he befor had ben,
Ewyne as the day [he] the firſt courſe hath maad.
Alone ry*cht* thar he howit, and abaade,

[1] MS. "*with*;" which is crossed out, and "*in*" inserted above, rather minutely written.

[Fol. 35 *a*.]

Behalding to the bertes, whar the qweñ
Befor at the aſſemble he had señ
Rych to ſo the ſone ſchewith furth his lycht,
And to his armour went is euery wycht;
One athir half the Iuſting is bygon,
And many o fair and knych[t]ly courſ is rown.
The blak knycht ȝhit howyns on his ſted,
Of al thar doing takith he no hed,
Bot ay, apone the beſynes of thocht,
In beholding his ey departit nocht.
To quhom the lady of melyhalt beheld,
And knew hyme by his armour & his ſcheld,
Qwhat that he was; and thus ſche ſaid one hycht:
"Who is he ȝone? who may he be, ȝhone knycht,
So ſtill that hovith and ſterith not his Ren,
And ſeith the knychtis rynyng one the greñ?"
Than al beholdith, and in princypale
Sir gawan beholdith moſt of all;
Of melyha[l]t the lady to hyme maid
Incontinent, his couche and gart be had
Be-fore o wyndew thore, as he mycht se
The knycht, the oft, and al the aſſemble.
He lukith furth, and ſone the knycht hath ſen,
And, but delay, he ſaith one to the qwen,
"Madem, if ȝhe remembir, ſo it was
The red knycht in to the ſamyne place
That wencuſt al [at] the firſt aſſemble;
Whar that ȝone knycht howis, howit hee."
"ȝha," quod the qwen, "rycht well remembir I;
Qwhat is the cauſ at ȝhe inquere, & quhy?"
"Madem, of [al] this larg warld is he
The knycht the wich I moſt deſir to ſee
His ſtrenth, his manhed, his curag, and his mycht,
Or do in armys that longith to o knycht."
[B]y thus, arthur, with conſell well awyſit,
Haith ordanit his batellis, and devyſit:

He abides there alone, looking towards the parapet where he saw the queen.

The jousting begins.

The black knight still halts on his steed.

The lady beholds him and knows him; but yet inquires who he is,

thus calling the attention of Gawane,

who saith to the queen:

"Madam, remember that the red knight halted where yon knight halts."

"Why do you inquire?" she replies.

"He is the knight, madam, whom I most desire to see."

Arthur arranges his lines of battle.

King Ydrus leads the first;

The firſt of them led ydrus king, & he
O worthy man vas ne*m*myt for to bee.

Harwy the Reweyll, an aged knight, the second.

The ſecund led harwy the Reweyll,
That in this world was kny*ch*t that had moſt feill
For to p*ro*wid that longith to the were,
One agit kny*ch*t, and well couth armys bere.

[Fol. 35 *b*.]

[T]he thrid feld [he] deliu*er*it in the hond

King Angus, a cousin of Arthur, leads the third.

Of ang*us*, king of ylys of ſcotlande,
Wich cuſing was one to king arthur nere,
One hardy kny*ch*t he was, w*ith*outen were.

King Ywons the fourth.

The ferd batell led ywons the king,
O manly kny*ch*t he was In to al thing.
And thus dewyſit ware his batell*is* ſere,

In every company are 15,000.

In euery feld xv thouſand were.

The lord Sir Ywan leads the rearguard.

[T]he fift[1] batell the lord *ſir* ywan lede,
Whois ma*n*hed was *in* euery cu*n*tre dred,
Sone he was one to wryne the kyng,
Forwart, ſtout, hardy, wyſ, and ȝhing;
Xx thouſand in his oft thai paſt,
Wich ordanit was for to aſſemble laſt.

Galiot's armies.

[A]nd galiot, apone the tothir ſyde,
Ry*ch*t wyſly gan h*is* batell*is* to dewid.

Malenginys leads the first line;

The firſt of them led malenginys the king,
None hardyar In to this erth lewyng;
He neu*er* more out of his cuntre Raid,
Nor he w*ith* hyme one hunde*r*eth kny*chtus* hade.

the first-conquest king the second; Walydeyne the third;

[T]he ſecund the first-conqueſt king led,
That for no p*er*ell of armys vas adred;
The thrid, o king clepit walydeyne,
He led, and was o manly kny*ch*t, but weyne.

Clamedeus the fourth;

[T]he ferd, king clamede*us* has,
Wich that lord of far ylys was.

and King Brandymagus the fifth.

The fift[2] batell, whar xl thouſand were,
King brandymag*us* had to led and ſtere,

[1] MS. "firſt." See l. 2870. [2] MS. "firſt."

O manly knyc*h*t, and prewit well oft-ſyß,
And in his conſell wonde*r* ſcharp & wyß.
Galiot non armys bur that day,
Nor as o knyc*h*t he wald hyme-ſelf aray,
But as o ſe*r*uand in o habariowne,
O prekyne hat, and ek o gret trownſciowñ
In til his hond, and one o curſour ſet,
The beſt that was in ony lond to get.
Endlong the rewar men myc*h*t behold & ſee,
Of knyc*h*t*is* weryne mony one aſſemble;
And the blak knyc*h*t ſtill he couth abyde,
W*ith*out remowyng, one the Riwer ſyde,
Bot to the bartes to behold and ſee
Thar as his hart deſyrit moſt to bee:
And quhen the lady of melyhalt haith ſeñ
The knyc*h*t ſo ſtond, ſche ſaid one to the qweñ,
"Madem, It is my confell at ȝhe send
One to ȝone knyc*h*t, ȝour-ſelf for to *com*mend,
Beſeiching hyme that he wald wnde*r*tak
This day to do of armys, for ȝour ſak."
The quen anſuerit as that hir lykit noc*h*t,
For othir thing was more In to hir thoc*h*t,
"For well ȝhe ſe the pe*r*ell how disio[i]nt,
The adwentur now ſtondith one the point
Boith of my lord his honore, and h*is* lond,
And of his men, *in*[1] dange*r* how thai ſtond:
Bot ȝhe, and ek thir vthere ladice may,
If that yhow lykith, to the knyc*h*t gar ſay
The meſag; is none that wil yhow let,
For I tharof ſal noc*h*t me ente*r*met."
On to the quen ſcho faith, "her I,
If ſo it pleß thir vthir ladice by,
Am for to ſend one to the knyc*h*t *con*tent;"
And al the ladice can thar-to aſſent,

Galiot bore no arms;

but was arrayed as a servant in a habergeon with a "prekyne" hat, and a truncheon in his hand.

The black knight still remains looking towards the parapet.

The lady says to the queen— [Fol. 36 *a*.]

"Madam, pray commend yourself to yon knight."

The queen replies

that the lady and the rest may send a message, but that she will not herself take part in it.

[1] Stevenson reads "the"; but "the" is crossed out, and "*in*" written over it.

Beſeching hir the meſag to dewyß,
As ſche that was moſt prudent & moſt wyß.

The lady sends a discreet maiden,
Sche grantit, and o madeñ haith thai tone,
Diſcret, apone this meſag for till gone;

and Sir Gawane a squire, with two spears,
And ſir gawan a ſqwyar bad alſo,
With two ſperis one to the knycht to go.
The lady than, withouten more dulay,
Haith chargit hir apone this wyß to ſay:

to say that all the ladies, the queen alone excepted, commend them to the black knight,
"Schaw to the knycht, the ladice euer-ilkone
Ben In the court, excep the quen allon,
Til hyme them haith recommandit oft-ſyß,
Beſeching hyme of knychthed and gentriß,
(Or if It hapyne euermore that he ſhall
Cum, quhar thai may, owther an or all,
In ony thing awail hyme or ſupport,
Or do hyme ony pleſans or comfort,)

and pray him to essay some deed of arms.
He wold wichfaif for loue of them this day
In armys ſum manhed to affay;
And ſay, ſir gawan hyme the ſperis ſent;
Now go, this is the ſek of our entent."

The damsel and squire
The damyſell ſche hath hir palfray tone,
The sqwyar with the ſperis with hir goñ;

[Fol. 36 b.]
The nereſt way thai paß one to ye knycht,

repeat the message.
Whar ſche repete hir meſag haith ful rycht:

Sir Lancelot, finding the queen not in the message,
And quhen he hard, and planly wnderſtude,
How that the quen not in the meſag ȝude,

was not content,
He ſpak no word, bot he was not content;
Bot, of ſir gawan, glaid in his entent,
He aſkit quhar he was, and of his fair?
And thai to hyme the maner can duclair;

but asks the squire to hold the two spears ready for him.
Than the ſqwyar he prayth that he wold
Paß to the feld, the ſperis for to hold.
He ſaw the knychtis ſemblyng her and thare,
The ſtedis Rynyng with the ſadillis bare;
His ſpuris goith in to the ſtedis syde,
That was ful ſwyft, and lykit not to byd;

And he that was hardy, ferſ, and ſtout,
Furth by o ſyd aſſemblyng on a rout
Whar that one hundereth knychtis was, & mo;
And with the firſt has Recounterit so,
That frome the deth not helpith hym his ſcheld,
Boith horſ and man is lying in the feld;
The ſpere is gone, and al in pecis brak,
And he the trunſcyoune in his hand hath tak
That two or thre he haith the ſadillis reft,
Whill in his hond ſchortly no thing is left.
Syne, to the ſquyar, of the feld is goñ,
Fro hyme o ſpere In to his hond haith ton,
And to the feld returnyt he aȝayne:
The firſt he met, he goith one the plan,
And ek the next, and ſyne the thrid alſo;
Nor in his hond, nore in his ſtrak was ho.
His ennemys that veryng In affray
Befor his ſtrok, and makith rovm alway;
And in ſich wyſ ay in the feld he vrocht,
Whill that his ſperis gon var al to nocht;
Whar-of ſir gawan berith vitneſing
Throw al this world that thar vas non levyng,
In ſo ſchort tyme ſo mych of armys wrocht.
His ſperis gone, out of the feld he focht,
And paſſit is one to the Rewere syde,
Rycht thore as he was wont for to abyde;
And ſo beholdyne In the ſamyne plañ,
As to the feld hyme lykit nocht aȝañ.
Sir gawan ſaw, and ſaith on to the quen,
"Madem, yhone knycht diſponit [not],[1] I weyñ,
To help ws more, fore he ſo is awyſit;
As I preſume, he thinkith hyme diſpiſit
Of the meſag that we gart to hyme mak;
Yhowre-ſelf yhe have ſo ſpecialy out-tak,

He attacks a company of a hundred knights, slays the nearest,

and with the stump of his spear bereaves two or three of their saddles.

He takes a new spear from the squire, and overthrows three knights.

His spears gone, he returns to his first position.

[Fol. 37 a.]

Sir Gawane says to the queen: "Madam, yon knight thinks himself despised, because you so specially excepted yourself in the message;

[1] "not" seems required.

He thinkith ewill contempnit for to bee,
Conſider*ing* how that the neceſſitee
Moſt prinſpally to yhowr ſupporting lyis.
Tharfor my conſell is, yhow to dewyß,
And ek ȝhowre-ſelf *in* yhowr *tre*ſpas accuſ,
ask him mercy, therefore, and excuse your guilt. And aſk hyme mercy, and yhour gilt excuſ.
For well it oucht o prince or o king
Til honore and til cheriß in al thing
O worthi man, that is in kny*ch*thed p*re*wit.
For throw the body of o man eſchevit
Mony o wondir, mony one aduenture,
That m*er*well war til any creature.
And als oft-tyme is boith hard & ſen,
For often, by one knight's prowess, have 40,000 been worsted by 5,000. Quhar xl thouſand haith diſcum*fit* ben
Vith v thouſand, and only be o kny*ch*t;
For throw his ſtrenth, his vorſchip, & h*is* my*ch*t,
His falowſchip ſich comfort of hym tais
That thai ne dreid the dang*er* of thar fays.
And thus, madem, I wot, w*ith*outen were,
If yon knight will continue to help the king, If that ȝhone kny*ch*t this day will p*er*ſywere
W*ith* his manhed for helping of the king,
We ſal have cauß to dred in to no thing.
Our folk of hyme thai ſal ſich comfort tak,
And ſo adred thar ennemys ſal mak,
That ſur I am, onys or the ny*ch*t,
yon folk shall perforce take to flight." Of forß ȝhone folk ſal tak one them the fly*ch*t:
Wharffor, madem, that ȝhe have gilt to mend,
My conſell is one to ȝhon kny*ch*t ȝe ſend."
She consents to send a message. "S*ir*," q*uod* ſche, "quhat pleſſith yhow to do
ȝhe may dewyß, and I conſent thar-to."
Than was the lady of melyhalt *con*tent,
And to ſ*ir* gawan in-to-*con*tynent
[Fol. 37 *b*.] Sche clepit the maid, wich that paſſit ar;
A maiden is therefore sent to say, And he hir bad the meſag thus duclar.
"Say [to][1] the kny*ch*t, the quen hir reco*m*mendith,

[1] "to" seems required.

And ſal correk in quhat that ſche offendith
At his awn will, how ſo hyme lift dewyß;
And hyme exortith, in moſt humyll wyß,
As eu*er* he will, whar that ſche can or may,
Or powar haith hir charg, be ony way,
And for his worſchip and his hie m*an*hede,
And for hir luf, to helpen *in* that ned
The king*is* honore, his land fore to preſerf,
That he hir thonk for eu*er* may deſerf."
And four ſquyaris chargit he alſo
W*ith* thre horß and ſperis x to go
Furt*h* to the knycht, hyme prayng for his ſak,
At his raqueſt thame in his ned to tak.

[T]he maden furt*h* w*ith* the ſqwyar*is* is went
One to the kny*cht*, and ſchawith y*ar* entent.
Tho meſag hard, and ek ye preſent ſeñ,
He anſwerit, and aſkith of the qwen;
"S*ir*," q*uod* ſche, ["sche][1] in to ȝhone bartiis lyis,
Whar that this day yhour dedis ſal dewyß,
Yhowr manhed, yhour worſchip, and affere,
How ȝhe *con*teñ, and how yhe armys bere;
The quen hir-ſelf, and many o lady to,
Sal Iug*is* be, and vitnes how yhe do."
Than he, whois hart ſtant in o new aray,
Saith, "damyceyll, on to my lady ſay,
How eu*er* that hir lykith that it bee,
Als far as wit or powar is in me,
I am hir kny*cht*, I ſal at hir *com*mand
Do at I may, w*ith*outen more demand.
And to ſ*ir* gawan, for his gret gentriß,
Me reco*m*mend and thonk a thouſand ſyß."
W*ith* that o ſper he takith in his hond,
And ſo in to his ſterapis can he ſtond
That to ſ*ir* gawan ſemyth that the kny*cht*

3024 3028 3032 3036 3040 3044 3048 3052 3056

that the queen humbly exhorts him

to help in that need to preserve the king's honour, and to deserve her thanks.

Sir Gawane also sends four squires with three horses and ten spears.

The message heard, he inquires about the queen,

and is told that from yon parapet she can witness his deeds.

He returns a message that he is the queen's knight.

He stands in his stirrups; and seems to increase a foot in height.

[1] A second "sche" is here required.

Encreſyng gon o larg fut one hycht;
And to the ladice ſaith he, and the qwen,
"ȝhon is the knyc*h*t that eu*er* I have ſen
In al my tyme moſt knyc*h*tly of affere,
And in hyme-ſelf gon fareſt armys bere."

[Fol. 38 *a*.] [T]he knyc*h*t that haith Reme*m*brit in his thoc*h*t

Greatly encouraged, The qwenys charg*is*, & how ſche hy*m* befoc*h*t,
Curag can encreſing to his hart;
His curſer lap, and gan onon to ſtart;
And he the ſqwaris haith reqwyrit ſo,
That thai w*ith* hyme one to the feld wald go.

without delay he crosses over the river to the field; Than goith he one, w*ith*outen mor abaid,
And our the reuar to the feld he raid;
Don goith his ſpere onone In to the Reſt,

and goes in wherever he sees most peril. And in he goith, w*ith*outen mor areſt,
Thar as he ſaw moſt p*er*ell and moſt dred
In al the feld, and moſt of help [1] had ned,
Whar ſemblyt was the firſt-*con*queſt king
W*ith* mony o knyc*h*t that was in his leding.

He overthrows two knights. The firſt he met, doune goith boith horſ & man;
The ſper was holl, and to the next he Rañ
That helpit hyme his hawbrek nor h*is* ſcheld,
Bot throuch and throuch haith perſit i*n* the feld.

Sir Kay, Sir Sygramors, Sir Gresown, Sir Ywan, Sir Brandellis, and Gahers, all six in a race spur across the field with stretched spears, S*ir* kay, the wich haith this encontyr ſen,
His horſ he ſtrekith our the larg gren,
And f*ir* ſygramors ek the deſyrand,
W*ith* f*ir* greſown cu*m*myth at y*ar* honde,
Son of the duk, and alſua f*ir* ywan
The baſtart, and f*ir* brandellis onan,
And gaherſ, wich that broyir was
To gawan; thir ſex in a Raſ
Deliu*er*ly com prekand our the feld*is*
W*ith* ſperis ſtraucht, and cou*er*it w*ith* thar ſcheldis;
Sum for love, ſum honor to purcheſ,

and 100 knights after them. And aftir them one hund*er*eth knyc*h*t*is* was,

[1] MS. "held."

In ſamyne will, thar manhed to aſſay.
On his v falowis clepit than ſir kay,
And ſaith them, "ſiris, thar has ȝhonder ben
A courſ that neuer-more farar was ſen
Maid be o knycht, and we ar cummyn ilkon
Only ws one [his] worſchip to diſpone;
And neuer we in al our dais mycht
Have bet axampil than iffith ws ȝone knycht
Of well doing; and her I hecht for me
Ner hyme al day, if that I may, to bee,
And folow hyme at al [my] mycht I ſall,
Bot deth or vthir adwentur me fall.
With that thir ſex, al in one aſſent,
With freſch curag In to the feld Is went.
The blak knychtis ſpere in pecis goñe,
Frome o ſqwyar oñe vthir haith he toñe,
And to the feld onone he goith ful rycht;
Thir ſex with hyme ay holdith at yar mycht.
And than bygan his wonderis in the feld;
Thar was no helme, no hawbryk, nore no ſcheld,
Nor yhit no knycht ſo hardy, ferſ, nore ſtout,
No ȝhit no maner armour mycht hald owt
His ſtrenth, nore was of powar to withſtond;
So mych of armys dyde he with his honde,
That euery wight ferleit of his deid,
And al his fois ſtondith ful of dreid.
So befely he can his tyme diſpend,
That of the ſperis wich ſir gawan ſend,
Holl of them all thar was not lewit oñe;
Throw wich but mercy to the deyth is gon
Ful many o knycht, and many o weriour,
That couth ſuſten ful hardely o ſtour.
And of his horſ ſupprifit ded ar two,
One of his awn, of gawanis one alſo,
And he one fut was fechtand one the gren,
When that ſir kay haith with his falowis ſeñ;

Sir Kay exhorts them

to keep near the black knight, and follow his guidance all day.

[Fol. 38 b.]

With a second spear, the black knight seeks the field, closely followed by the six.

No knight nor armour can withstand him.

Every wight wonders at his deeds.

He uses up all Gawane's spears.

Two horses of his are killed, and he fights on foot.

The squire brings him a fresh horse;

The ſqwyar *with* his horſ than to hy*m* broc*ht*;
Magre his fois he to his courſeir ſoc*ht*
Deliu*er*ly, as of o myc*ht*y hart,

he leaps into the saddle without stirrups.

W*ith*out ſteropis in to his ſadill ſtart,
That euery wycht beholding m*er*vell has
Of his ſtrenth and deliu*er* beſynes.

Sir Kay asks who he is,

S*ir* kay, ſeing his horſ, and how that thai
War cled in to *ſir* gawanis aray,
Aſkith at the ſquyar if he knewith
What that he was, this kny*cht*? & he hym ſchewith

but the squire cannot tell.

He wiſt no thing quhat that he was, nore hee
Befor that day hyme neu*er* ſaw *with* Ee.
Than aſkith he, how and one quhat wyſ
On gawanis horſ makith hyme ſich ſ*er*uice?
The ſqw[y]ar ſaith, "forſuth y wot no more;
My lord ws bad, I not the cauſ quharfore."

The black knight returns to the field.

The blak kny*cht*, horſit, to the feld can ſew
Als freſch as he was in the morow new;

The six comrades follow him.

The ſex falowis fólowit hyme ilkone,
And al in front on to the feld ar goñ;

[Fol. 39 *a*.]

Ry*cht* freſchly one thar ennemys thai ſoght,
And many o fair poynt of armys vroght.

Malangin's host is discomfited by king Ydras; and retreats to join the second line, commanded by the Conquest-king;

[T]han hapnyt to king malangins oft
By ydras king diſcu*m*fit was, & loſt,
And fled, and to the *con*queſt-king ar goñe,
Thar boith the batell*is* aſſemblit In to one;
King malengynis in to his hart was wo,
For of hyme-ſelf no bett*er* kny*cht* myc*ht* go;

so that 40,000 are now opposed to 15,000 of Arthur's.

Thar xl thouſand war thai for xv.
Than myc*ht* the feld ryc*ht* p*er*ellus be ſen
Of armyt kny*chtis* gaping one the ground;
Sum deith, and ſum *with* mony a grewous wond;
For arthuris kny*chtis*, that manly war and gud,
Suppos that vthir was o multitude,
Reſauit tham well at the ſperis end;
But one ſuch wyſ thai may not lang defend.

The blak knycht ſaw the danger of the feld, The black knight, knowing who is beholding him,
And al his doingis knowith quho beheld,
And ek remembrith in to his entent
Of the meſag that ſche haith to hyme ſent:
Than curag, ſtrenth encreſing with manhed,
Ful lyk o knycht one to the feld he raid,
Thinking to do his ladice love to have, thinks to have his lady's love, or
Or than his deth befor hir to reſave. die before her.
Thar he begynyth in his ferſ curag
Of armys, as o lyoune in his rag;
Than merwell was his doing to behold;
Thar was no knycht ſo ſtrong, nor yhit ſo bold,
That in the feld befor his fuerd he met,
Nor he ſo hard his ſtrok apone hyme ſet,
That ded or wondit to the erth he ſocht;
For thar was not bot wonderis that he wrocht. He works nothing but wonders;
And magre of his fois euerilkone,
In to the feld oft tymys hyme aloñ and often passes alone through the field.
Throuch and throuch he paſſith to & fro;
For in the ward[1] it was the maner tho
That non o knycht ſhuld be the brydill tak
Hyme to oreſt, nore cum behynd his bak,
Nor mo than on at onys one o knycht
Shuld ſtrik, for that tyme worſchip ſtud ſo rycht.
Ȝhit was the feld rycht perellus and ſtrong
Till arthuris folk, ſet thai contenyt longe;
Bot in ſich wyſ this blak knycht can conten, [Fol. 39 b.]
That thai, the wich that hath his manhed ſeñ, He fights in such wise as to encourage all who see his deeds.
Sich hardyment haith takyne In his ded,
Them thocht thai had no maner cauſ of dred,
Als long as he mycht owthir ryd or go,
At euery ned he them recomfort ſo.
Sir kay haith with his falowis al the day Sir Kay and his fellows follow him all day.
Folowit hyme al that he can or may,

[1] Another spelling of *warld*, i. e. world, which occurs in the fuller form in l. 3212.

And wondir well thai have in armys prewit,
And with thar manhed oft thar folk relewit;
Bot well thai faucht in diuerß placis fere,
With multitud yar folk confufit were,
That long in fich wyß mycht thai nocht conteñ.
Sir kay, that hath fir gawans qfquyaris fen,
He clepit hyme, and haith hyme prayt fo,
That to fir harwy the rewell wil he go,
And fay to hyme, "ws think hyme ewil awyfit;
For her throuch hyme he fufferit be fupprifit
The beft knycht that euer armys bur;
And if it fo befell of adwentur,
In his defalt, that he be ded or lamyt,
This warld fal have hyme vtraly defamyt.
And her ar of the round table alfo
A faloufchip, that fall in well and wo
Abid with hyme, and furth for to endur
Of lyf or deth, this day, thar adwentur;
And if fo fal difcumfyt at thai bee,
The king may fay that wonder ewill haith he
Contenit hyme, and kepit his honore,
Thus for to tyne of chevalry the flour!"
The fqw[y]ar hard, and furth his way Raid,
In termys fchort he al his mefag faid.
Sir harwy faith, "y wytneß god, that I
Neuer in my days comytit tratory,
And if I now begyne In to myne eld,
In ewill tyme fyrft com I to this feld;
Bot, if god will, I fal me fon difcharg.
Say to fir kay, I fal not ber the charg,
He fal no mater have me to rapref,
I fal amend this mys if that I lef."
The fqwyar went and tellit to fir kay;
And fir harwy, in al the haft he may,
Affemblyt hath his oftis, & onoñ
In gret defyre on the feld is gon

But at last they are nearly all overpowered by numbers.

Sir Kay sends Gawane's squire with a message to Sir Harwy that he ought not to suffer the best knight that ever bore arms to be surprised,

nor six knights of the Round Table to be discomfited.

The squire takes the message.

Sir Harwy says that Sir Kay shall have no cause to reprove him.

Sir Harwy comes to support them;

[Fol. 40 a.]

Before his folk, and haldith furth his way;
Don goith his ſper, and ewyne before ſir kay
So hard o knycht he ſtrykith in his ten
That horſ and he lay boith apone the gren.
Sir gawan ſaw the counter that he maad,
And leuch for al the ſarues that he had:
That day ſir harwy prewyt in the feld
Of armys more than longith to his eld,
For he was more than fyfty yher of ag,
Set he was ferſ and ȝong in his curag;
And fro that he aſſemblyt his bataill
Doune goith the folk of galotis al haill;
For to withſtond thai war of no poware,
And yhit of folk x thouſand mo thei vare.

and proves himself a better warrior than might have been expected of one so old.

Galiot's folk are beaten.

Kyng valydone, that ſauch on ſuch o wyſ
His falowis dangerit with thar ennemys,
With al his folk, being freſ and new,
Goith to the feld onon, them to reſſkew;
Thar was the feld rycht perellus aȝañe,
Of arthuris folk ful many on var ſlan.

King Valydone comes to support them.

Bot angus, quhich that lykith not to bid,
And ſaw the perell one the tother ſid,
His ſted he ſtrok, and with his oſt is gon
Whar was moſt ned, and thar the feld has ton.

Angus comes to aid Arthur's men.

Kyng clamedyus makith non abaid,
Bot with his oſt one to the ſid he raid.

Clamedyus comes to aid Galiot's men.

And ywons king, that haith his cummyn ſen,
Encounterit hyme in myddis of the greñ.
The aucht batellis aſſemblyt one this wiſ;
On ather half the clamore and the cryiſ
Was lametable and petws for til her,
Of knychtis wich in diuerſ placis fere
Wondit war, and fallyng to and fro,
ȝhit galyotis folk war xx thouſand mo.

Ywons encounters Clamedyus.

Great clamour and lamentable cries on either side.

The blak knycht than on to hyme-ſelf he ſaid:
"Remembir the, how yhow haith ben araid,

The black knight bids himself remember love's power over him;

Ay ſen ye hour that yow was makid knyc*h*t,
W*ith* love, a3ane quhois powar & whois myc*h*t
Yow haith no ſtrenth, yow may It not endur,
Nor 3hit non vthir erthly creatur;
and that only his lady's mercy or his life's end can amend him.
And bot two thing*is* ar the to amend,
Thi ladice mercy, or thi lyvys end.
And well yhow wot that on to hir p*re*ſens,
[Fol. 49 *b*.]
Til hir eſtat, nor til hir excellens,
Thi febilneſ neu*er*more is able
For to attan, ſche is ſo honorable.
And ſen no way yow may ſo hie extend,
He counsels himself to strive for her thanks,
My verray conſell is, that yow pretend
This day, (ſen yow becu*mm*yne art hir knyc*h*t
Of hir comand, and fechtit in hir ſyc*h*t),
And well yow ſchaw, ſen yow may do no mor,
That of reſone ſche ſal the thank tharfore;
and to be ashamed of every point of cowardice.
Of euery poynt of cowardy yow ſcham,
And in til armys purcheſ the ſum nam."
W*ith* that of love in to o new deſir
Swift as a cross-bow-bolt he seeks the field.
His ſpere he ſtraucht, and ſwift as any wyre
W*ith* al his forſ the n*er*eſt feld he ſoght;
His ful ſtrenth in armys thar he vroght,
In to the feld ruſching to and fro,
Doune goith the man, doune goith the horſ alſo;
Sum throw the ſcheld is perſit to the hart,
Sum throw the hed, he may It not aſtart.
His sword carves the head from some, and cuts the arms of others in twain.
His bludy ſuerd he dreuch, that carwit ſo
Fro ſum the hed, and ſum the arm in two;
Sum in the feld fellit is in ſwoñ,
Throw ſum his ſuerd goith to the ſadill doune.
His fois waren abaſit of his dedis,
His mortell ſtrok ſo gretly for to dred Is;
When his foes see him, they leave the place for dread of death.
Whar thai hyme ſaw, w*ith*in a lytall ſpace,
For dreid of ded, thai levyng hyme the place,
That many o ſtrok ful oft he haith forlorñ;
The ſpedy horſ away the knyc*h*t hath borñ.

In to his wyrking neuermore he ſeſt,
Nor non abaid he makith, nor areſt.
His falowis, ſo in his knychthed affuryd,
Thai ar recomfort, thar manhed is recouеryt,
And one thar fois ful ferſly thai ſoght,
Thar goith the lyf of many o knycht to nocht.
So was the batell wonderful to tell,
Of knychtis to ſe the multitud that fell,
That pety was til ony knycht to ſeñ
The knychtis lying gaping on the gren.
The blak knycht ay continewit ſo faſt,
Whill[1] many one, diſcumfit at the laſt,
Are fled, and planly of the feld thei pas:
And galyot haith wondyr, for he was
Of mor powar, and aſkit at them qwhy
As cowartis thai fled ſa ſchamfully?
Than ſaith o knycht, ſor wondit in the brayne,
"Who lykith, he may Retwrn agayne
Frome qwhens we come, merwalis for to ſee,
That in his tyme neuer ſich ſauch hee."
"Marwell," quod he, "that dar I boldly ſay
Thay may be callit, and quhat thai ar, I pray?"
"Schir, in the feld forſuth thar is o knycht,
That only throw his body and his mycht
Wencuſſith all, that thar may non ſuſten
His ſtrokis, thai ar ſo fureows and ken.
He farith as o lyone or o beyre,
Wod in his rag, for ſich is his affere.
Nor he the knycht in to the armys Red,
Wich at the firſt aſſemble in this ſted
Wencuſſith all, and had the holl renown,
He may to this be no comparyſoune,
Fore neuer he feſith ſen the day vas goñ,
Bot euermore continewit in to one."

His knightly deeds assure his fellows.

It was pitiful to see the knights gaping upon the green.

[Fol. 41 a.]

Galiot asks his men why they flee.

A knight replies, that whoever likes may go and see marvels.

Galiot asks, what marvels; and the knight tells him there is a knight who vanquishes all;

who fares as a lion or a bear;

to whom the red knight bears no comparison.

[1] MS. "Whilk."

Galiot says he will go and see.

Quod galiot, "in nome of god and we
Al, be tyme, the ſuthfaſtneſ ſal see."

Galiot is armed, rallies the flyers, and encourages his men.

[T]han he in armys that he had is gon,
And to the feld *with* hyme a*ȝ*ane hath ton
Al the flear*is*, and foundyne [in][1] ſich aray
His folk, that ner diſcumfyt al war thay;
Bot quhen thai ſaw cu*m*myne our the plan
Thar lord, thai tuk ſich hardeme*n*t a*ȝ*añ,
They shout their war-cries.
That thar eſſen*ȝ*eis lowd thai gon to cry.
He chargit tham to go, that ware hyme by,
Straucht to the feld, *with* al thar holl forſ;
And thai, the wich that ſparit not the horſ,
All redy war to fillyng his *com*mand,
And freſchly went, *with*owten more demand:
Throw qwich thar folk recou*er*yt haith thar place,
All think a new host is coming.
For al the feld *pre*ſwmyt that thar was
O new oft, one ſuch o wyſ thai ſoght;
Arthur's folk determine rather to die than fly.
Whar arthuris folk had paſſith al to no*ch*t,
Ne war that thai the bett*er* war ilkoñe,
And at thai can them vtraly diſpoñe
[Fol. 41 b.]
Rathar to dee than flee, in thar entent,
And of the blak kny*ch*t haith ſich hardyment;
For at al p*er*ell, al harmys, and myſchef,
In tyme of ned he can tham al ralef.
[T]har was the batell danger*us* & ſtrong,
Gret was the pres, bat*h* perell*us* & throng;
The black knight is borne to the ground.
The blak kny*ch*t is born on to the ground,
His horſ hyme falyth, that fellith dethis wound.
The six comrades go to the earth.
The vi falowis, that falowit hyme al day,
Sich was the preſ, that to the erth go thay;
And thar in myd among his ennemys
He was about encloſit one ſich wyſ
None know where he is.
That quhare he was non of [his] falowis knew,
Nor my*ch*t no*ch*t cum to help hyme, nore reſkew.

[1] The sense, but not the metre, requires "in."

And thus among his ennemys allon
His nakid ſuerd out of his hond haith ton;
And thar he *pre*wit his wertew & *his* ſtrenth;
For thar was none *with*in the ſuerdis lenth
That came, bot he goith to confuſioune.
Thar was no helme, thar was no habirioune,
That may reſiſt his ſuerd, he ſmytith so;
One euery ſyd he helpith to and fro,
That al about the compas thai my*cht* ken;
The ded horſ lyith virſlyng *with* the men.
Thai hyme affal3eing bot*h* *with* ſcheld & ſpere,
And he a3ane; as at the ſtok the bere
Snybbith the hardy hound*is* that ar ken,
So farith he; for neue*r* my*cht* be ſen
His ſuerd to reſt, that in the gret rout
He rowmyth all the compas hyme about.
[A]nd galiot, beholding his manhed,
*With*in his-ſelf wonde*r*ith of his ded,
How that the body only of o kny*cht*
Haith ſich o ſtrenth, haith ſich affere & my*cht*;
Than ſaid he thus, "I wald not that throw me,
Or for my cauſ, that ſuch o kny*cht* ſuld dee,
To conquer all this world that is ſo larg."
His horſ than can he *with* his ſpuris charg,
A gret trunſioune In to his hond hath ton,
And in the thikeſt of the preſ is goñ,
And al his folk chargit he to ſeſ.
At his *com*mand thai levyng al the preſ;
And quhen he had departit all the rout,
He ſaid, "*ſir* kny*cht*, havith now no dout."
Wich anſwerit, "I have no cauſ to dred."
"3is," q*uod* he, "ſa eue*r* god me ſped,
Bot apone fut quhill 3e ar fechtand here,
And yhow defendith apone ſich manere,
So hardely, and ek ſo lyk o kny*cht*,
I ſal my-ſelf *with* al my holl my*cht*

He defends himself with his sword.

No helm nor habergeon may resist his sword

He fares like a bear at the stake, that snubs the hardy hounds.

Galiot wonders at his deeds;

and says that such a knight shall not die on his account.

He charges all his folk to cease;

[Fol. 42 *a*.]

and assures the black knight that he will himself warrant him from all harm.

Be yhour defens, and varand fra al harmys;
Bot had yhe left of worſchip In til armys,
What I have don I wold apone no wyß;
Bot ſen yhe ar of knyc*h*thed ſo to prys,
ȝhe ſal[1] no man*er* cauſ have for to dred:

He offers him as many horses as he needs; and proposes that they shall never again part.

And ſet yhour horſ be ſalit at this ned,
Diſpleſ yhow not, for-quhy ȝe ſal not want
Als many as yhow lykith for to hawnt;
And I my-ſelf, I ſal yhowr ſqwyar bee,
And, if god will, neu*er* more ſal wee
Dep*art*;" w*ith* that, anon he can to lycht
Doune frome his horſ, and gaf hyme to y^e^ knyc*h*t.

He 'lights from his horse, and gives him to Lancelot, who thanks him.

The lord he thonkit, and the horſ hath ton,
And als ſo freſch one to the feld is gon,
As at no ſtrok*is* he that day had ben.
His ſalowis glad, one horſ that hath hy*m* ſen,
To galiot one vthir horſ thai broght;
And he goith one, and frome the feld he ſoc*h*t,

Galiot returns to his host, and chooses a band of 10,000 men.

And to the plan quhar that his oft*is* were;
And brandymagus chargit he to ſtere
Eft*er* hyme, w*ith*in a lytill ſpace,
And x thouſand he takyne w*ith* hy*m* haſ.
Towart the feld onon he can to Rid,
And chargit them befor ye oft to byd.

The trumpets, clarions, horns, and bugles are sounded.

Wp goith the trumpet*is*, and the claryownis,
Hornys, bugill*is* blawing furt*h* thar ſownis,
That al the cuntre reſownit hath about;

Arthur's folk despair.

Than arthuris folk var in diſpar & dout,
That hard the noys, and ſaw the m*u*ltitud
Of freſch folk; thai cam as thai war wod.

The sable knight, still fearless,

[B]ot he that was w*ith*owten any dred,
In ſabill cled, and ſaw the gret ned,
Aſſemblyt al his ſalowis, and arayd;

harangues his men, saying,

And thus to them in manly t*er*mes ſaid:

[1] MS. "ſalt."

"What that ȝe ar I knaw not yhour eſtat, [Fol. 42 b.]
Bot of manhed and worſchip, well I wat,
Out throuch this warld yhe aw to be commendit,
This day ȝe have ſo knychtly yhow defendit.
And now yhe ſee how that, aȝanis the nycht,
Yhour ennemys pretendit with thar myght
Of multitud, and with thar new oft,
And with thar buglis and thar wyndis boſt
Freſchly cummyng In to ſich aray,
To ifyne yhow one owtrag[1] or affray.
And now almoſt cummyne Is the nycht,
Quharfor yhour ſtrenth, yhour curag, & yhovr mycht
Yhe occupye in to ſo manly wyſ,
That the worſchip of knychthed & empryſ
That yhe have wonyng, and ye gret renown
Be not yloſt, be not ylaid doune.
For one hour the ſufferyng of diſtreſ,
Gret harm It war yhe tyne the hie encreſ
Of vorſchip, ſeruit al this day before.
And to yhow al my conſell is, tharfore,
With manly curag, but radour, yhe pretend
To met tham ſcharply at the ſperis end,
So that thei feil the cold ſperis poynt
Out-throw thar ſcheldis, in thar hartis poynt.
So ſal thai fynd we ar no-thing affrayt;
Whar-throuch we ſall the well leſ be affayt.
If that we met them ſcharply in the berd,
The formeſt ſal mak al the laif afferd."
And with o woyſ thai cry al, "ſir knycht,
Apone yhour manhed, and yhour gret mycht,
We ſal abid, for no man ſhall eſchef
Frome yhow this day, his manhed for to pref."
And to his oft the lord ſir yvane ſaid,
"Yhe comfort yow, yhe be no-thing affrayd,

Ye see how your enemies, as night approaches, are striving to give you an outrage or a fright.

Employ then your courage, so that the honour ye have won be not again lost.

Resolve then to meet them sharply, without fear, so that they may feel the cold spear in their hearts.

Perhaps then the foremost will make the rest afraid."

They promise to stand firm.

Sir Yvan also bids his men be comforted; for that they see all

[1] MS. "owtray." See Glossary.

Ws ned no more to dreding of ſupprif ;
the ſtrength of their enemies. We ſe the ſtrenth of al our ennemys." 3480
Thus he ſaid, for he wend thai var no mo,
Sir Gawane, however, knew better. Bot ſir gawan knew well It vas not ſo ;
For al the oftis mycht he ſe al day,
And the gret hoſt he ſaw quhar yat it lay. 3484
Gallot also exhorts his men. [A]nd galiot he can his folk exort,
Beſeching them to be of good comfort,
And ſich enconter

[*The rest is wanting.*]

NOTES.

[It may be observed, once for all, that the expression *in to* repeatedly occurs where we should simply use *in;* and *one to* is in like manner put for *unto*. The ending *-ith* (for *-ed*) is frequent in the past tense, and *-it* (also for *-ed*) in the past participle, though this distinction is not always observed. A still more noticeable ending is *-ing* (for *-en*) in the infinitive. Observe further that the letters *v*, *u*, and *w* are perfectly convertible, and used quite indiscriminately; so that *wpone* means *upon; vthir* means *uthir*, i. e, *other: our* is put for *over; vounde* signifies *wound*, etc.]

Page 1, line 1. *The soft morow.* This nominative case has no verb. A similar construction occurs in the first lines of Books II. and III. 4. *Uprisith—his hot courss*, Upriseth in his hot course; *chare*, chariot. 6. *sent*, sendeth; so also *stant*, standeth, l. 326. 8. *valkyne*, waken. 10. *gyrss*, grass. 11. *assay*, assault. 13. *wox*, voice. 17. *frome I can*, from the time that I did. 18. *It deuit me*, it availed me. Jamieson gives "*Dow*, 1. to be able; A.S. *dugan* (*valere*), to be able. 2. to avail; Teut. *doogen*."

P. 2, l. 23. *hewy ȝerys*, heavy years. 24. "Until that Phœbus had thrice gone through his full circuits" (lit. spheres). See the peculiar use of "pas" in other places. 26. "So, by such a manner, was my lot fated;" see l. 41. 28. *carving can*, did cut. 30. *be the morow*, by the morn. 36. *neulyngis*, newly, anew. 43. *walkith*, walked. 50. *I-clede*, y-clad, clad. Ch. has *clede*. 54. "No one within thought he could be seen by any wight outside."

P. 3, l. 56. *clos it*, enclose it; the MS. has *closit*. 57. *alphest*. This reading of the MS. is an error for *alcest*. See Chaucer, Prologue to Legend of good women, l. 511:

> "The grete goodnesse of the quene Alceste,
> That turned was into a dayesye,"

Alceste being the contracted form of Alcestis. 59. *Wnclosing gane*, did unclose. 60. "The bright sun had illumined the spray, and

had updrawn (upwarped) into the lusty air the night's soft (sober) and moist showers; and had made the morning soft, pleasant, and fair." With this difficult passage we should compare l. 2477. 66. *Quhill*, until. 67. *till ony vicht*, to any wight. 69. *Bot gladness til the thochtful, euer mo*, etc., "But, as for gladness to the melancholy man, evermore the more he seeth of it, the more wo he hath." 73. *represent*, represented (accented on the second syllable). 74. *Al day gan be sor*, etc., "All the day, my spirit began to dwell in torment, through sorrow of thought;" *be sor*, by sorrow (A.S. *sorh*). 77. *Ore slep, or how I wot*, "Or sleep, ere I knew how." 83. *A-licht*, alighted. 84. *levis in to were*, livest in doubt.

P. 4, l. 91. *be morow*, by morrow; at early morn. 99. *set*, although. 103. *weil accordinge*, very fitting. 105. *long ore he be sonde*, (It is) long ere he be sound. 108. *seith, for to consel*, saith, that as for concealing or shewing, etc. 109. *althir-best*, lit. best of all; see Chaucer's use of *alderfirst, alderlast*.

P. 5, l. 127. *lat be thi nyss dispare*, let be thy nice (foolish) despair. 128. *erith*, earth. 134. *schall hyme hating*, shall hate him. The termination *-ing* is here the sign of the infinitive mood after the verb *shall*. 140. *Set*, although. 146. *tak one hand and mak*, undertake and compose; *trety*, treatise; *vnkouth*, unknown, new. 151. *belevis*, believe will please thy lady. 160. *yis*, this.

P. 6, l. 161. *troucht*, truth. 163. *discharge*, release. 170. *spir*, sphere. 171. "At command of a wise (god from) whose vision," etc. We sometimes find in old English the adjective "a wise" used absolutely for "a wise man." See "Le Morte Arthur," ed. F. J. Furnivall, l. 3318. 175. *tynt*, lost. 177. *be this worldis fame*. Here again, as in many other passages, "be" expresses with relation to, as regards. 185. *yaim*, them. 191. *demande*, demur.

P. 7, l. 198. *Quhill*, until. 200. *conten*, treat; lit. contain. 202. Lancelot is here called the son of Ban, king of Albanak; so again in l. 1447. 204. *redis*, read. 214. "I will not waste my efforts thereupon." 219. *wnwyst*, unwist, unknown. 225. *nome*, name. 226. *Iwondit to the stak*, very deeply wounded; but there is no doubt about the origin of the phrase. See Glossary. 228. *astart*, get rid of it, escape it.

P. 8, l. 240. *dedenyt to aras*, deigned to pluck out. 244. *hurtare*, hurter. 245. *Iwond*, wounded. 248. *ful wicht*, full nimble. 251. *of quhome*, by whom. 253. *send*, sent. 257. *pasing vassolag*, surpassing prowess. 260. "Passed down into the fell caves." 264. *tane*, taken. 266. *cure*, care.

P. 9, l. 267. *gart be maid*, caused to be made. 271. *awoue*, vow. 275. *in to that gret Revare*, in that great river. 284. *o gret confusione of pupil and knychtis, al enarmyt*, a great medley of people and knights, all fully armed. Stevenson actually reads *unarmyt!* 294. *I wil report;* both here and in l. 320 we should almost expect to find "*I nil report;*" i.e. I will not tell. It must mean, "I will

tell you why I omit to mention these things." Compare lines 266, 320. 297. *thing*, think.

P. 10, l. 305. *veris*, wars. 306. *be the wais*, by the ways. 307. *Tuex*, betwixt; *accorde*, agreement. 314. *mot*, must. 316. *stek*, concluded. 319. *most conpilour*, very great composer. 320. "As to whose name I will only say, that it is unfit," etc. 326. *stant*, standeth. 328. *yroung*, rung. 330. *beith*, shall be; observe the *future* sense of *beith* in this place. 331. *suet*, sweet. 332. "His soul in bliss preserved be on that account." 334. *and this endit.* Whether *endit* here refers to *inditing* or *ending* is perhaps doubtful.

NOTES TO BOOK I.

P. 11, l. 336. If by *aryeit* is here meant the *sign*, not the *constellation* of Aries, the day referred to is April 1 or 2, according to Chaucer's "Astrolabie." 338. *bewis*, boughs. 340. *makyne gone*, did make. 341. *in ther chere*, after their fashion. (For *chere*, see Glossary.) 345. *auerding to*, belonging to. 351. *Anoit*, annoyed. 352. *For why*, wherefore; so also *for-thi*, therefore. 354. *can*, began. 355. *sende*, sent. 358. *heryng*, hear (infin. mood). In the next line it occurs as a present participle. 362. *to pas hyme*, to go, depart. 364. *meit*, to dream of; *aperans*, an appearance, apparition.

P. 12, l. 365. *hore*, hair. 375. *vombe*, womb; hence bowels. 377. *stert*, started. 384. *gert*, caused. 390. *traist*, trust. 397. *demande*, demur, delay. 398. *at*, that.

P. 13, l. 407. *whill*, until. 408. *the*, they. 410. *to viting*, to know. 412. *shauyth al hall*, sheweth all whole. 414. *chesith*, chooseth. 422. *shire*, sir. 424. *fore to awysing*, in order to take counsel. 432. All this about *astronomy* (i. e. astrology) should be compared with Gower; Conf. Amantis, lib. vii; ed. Pauli, vol. 3, pp. 133, 134. Arachell, Nembrote, Moises, Hermes are there mentioned as astrologers. 433. The MS. has "set" (*not* with a long *s*). Mr Stevenson has "fet," which would seem right.

P. 14, l. 435. *nembrot*, Nimrod; see *Genesis and Exodus* (E. E. T. S.), l. 659. 436. *herynes*, miswritten for *herymes*, i. e. Hermes. 439. "The which they found were wondrously evil set." 440. *his sweuen met*, dreamed his dream. 443. *waryng in to were*, were in doubt. 444. *danger*, power to punish; compare Shakspere's use of the word. 457. *but delay*, without delay. 459. *stondith hewy cherith*, stood heavy-cheered, was sad in his demeanour. 465. *fundyng*, found. 466. *depend to*, depend upon.

P. 15, l. 475. *tone*, taken. 478. *assey*, test. 481. *record*, to tell out, speak. 487. *preseruith It allan*, is preserved alone. 499. *affy in-tyll*, rely upon. 500. *failye*, fail. 504. *there clergy*, their science.

P. 16, l. 519. "Through the watery lion, who is also faithful,

and through the leech and eke the water also, and through the counsel of the flower." It is very possible this passage is partly corrupt; l. 520 should certainly be (as may be seen from lines 2010, 2056),

"And throuch the leich withouten medysyne."

The meanings of lion, leech, and flower are fully explained, however, in lines 2013-2120. 524. *weyne*, vain. 527. *passid nat his thoght*, left not his thoughts. 531. *rachis*, braches, dogs. 533. *grewhundis*, grayhounds. 536. This purely conjectural line is merely inserted to carry on the sense. It is imitated from line 3293. In the next line we should read "grewhundis," rather than "grewhund." 538. *Befor ther hedis*, before their heads.

P. 17, l. 545. "All armed, as was then the fashion." 546. *salust*, saluted. 548. *kend*, known. 549. *leuyth*, liveth. 552. The rime requires "land," as in l. 638. 553. *yald hyme our*, yield him over. 554. *if tribut*, give tribute. 566. *recist*, resist; *mone bee*, must be. 568. *be*, by. 569. *day moneth day*, ere this day month; comp. l. 1162.

P. 18, l. 577. *fairhed*, fair-hood, beauty. 587. *magre myne entent*, in spite of my intention. 591. *nome*, took. 593. *Inquere at*, inquire of. 596. *wes*, was. 599. *rase*, rose. 605. *accordith*, agree thereto. 606. *recordith*, belongith. 607. *visare*, wiser.

P. 19, l. 621. *This spek I lest*, this I list to speak. 622. *varnit*, warned. 626. "Though the season of the year was contrary." 627. *atte*, at the. 629. *the ilk*, that (Scotch *thilk*). 632. *Melyhalt*, the name both of a hill, and of the town built upon it. 636. *affray*, terror. 642. *wnconquest*, unconquered. 643. *cwre*, care.

P. 20, l. 649. *nemmyt*, named. 652. *were*, war. 654. *or than to morn*, earlier than to-morrow. 660. *our few*, over few. 677. *northest*, north-east.

P. 21, l. 686. *fechteris*, fighters. 688. *holde*, held. 691. *presone*, prison. 697. *peite*, pity. 699. The metre of Lancelot's lament is that of Chaucer's "Cuckoo and Nightingale," and was very possibly copied from it. *Qwhat haue y gilt*, what crime have I committed. 702. *ago*, gone. 703. *nat*, naught; *me glaid*, gladden me. 706. *til haue*, to have. 709. *Sen thelke tyme*, since that time.

P. 22, l. 718. *of remed*, for a remedy. 719. *sesith*, ceaseth. 723. *with this lady*, by this lady. 728. *laisere*, leisure. 731. *diuerss wais sere*, divers several ways. 733. *bur*, bore. 735. *cher*, car. 740. *dout*, to fear. 745. *but were*, without doubt. This expression often occurs.

P. 23, l. 751. *few menye*, small company; an oddly sounding expression to modern ears. 753. *cold*, called. 754. *hot*, hight, was named. 755. *but in his cumpany*, unless he had with him. 757. *He saith;* the speaker is the captain of the hundred knights, called in l. 806 *Maleginis*. 768. *als fell*, just as many. 777. *hard*, heard. 781. *clepit*, called.

P. 24, l. 793, *as he wel couth*, as he well knew how. 796. *sen*, seen. 800. *sen*, since. 806. *was hot*, was hight, was named. 809. *In myde the borde and festinit in the stell*, In the midst they encounter, and fastened in the steel. See l. 850. 812. *Rout*, company. 815. *ferde*, fourth. 817. *sauch thar latter batell steir*, saw their last division stir.

P. 25, l. 820. *gane his mortall fell.* A word seems here omitted; if after *mortall* we insert *strokis*, the sense will be, "His enemies began his mortall strokes to feel." 825. *worth*, worthy. It would improve the metre to read *worthy* (l. 875). 828. *In to were*, in war, in the strife. 829. *hyme bure*, bore himself. 839. *to-for*, heretofore. 841. *Atour*, i. e. *at over*, across. 842. *assall*, assault. The rime shews we should read *assaill*, as in l. 855. 849. *socht atour*, made their way across. The use of *seke* in Early English is curious.

P. 26, l. 861. *setith his payn vpone*, devotes his endeavours to. 868. *al to-kerwith*, wholly cutteth in pieces. 880. *dirk*, dark. 883. *tan and slan*, taken and slain.

P. 27, l. 895. It frequently occurs in the MS. that a space is left at the beginning of a line, and the first letter of the line is omitted. It is evident that the intention was that the first letter should be illuminated, and that this, after all, was not done. Here, for instance, the T is omitted, as indicated by the square brackets. So also in l. 1083, etc. 897. *pasing home*, go home. 899. *was vent*, had gone. 905. *dulay*, delay. So also *duclar* for *declare*. 907. *comyne*, came. 908. *ill paid*, displeased. 909. *homly*, humbly. Stevenson reads *hourly*, but this is wrong; see l. 914. 911. *carful*, full of care, unhappy. 912. *withouten were*, without doubt. 914. *lawly*, lowly. 918. *wight*, with (unusual, and perhaps wrong).

P. 28, l. 924. *leife*, live. 929. *eft*, after. 933. *thar longith*, there belongeth. 943. *I was for til excuss*, I had some excuse. 944. "Because I did behove (to do it), out of very need." 946. *lefe it but*, leave it without. 953. *ma*, make. 954. *ga*, go. 955. *of new*, anew. 958. *But if that deth or other lat certan*, "Except it be owing to death or other sure hindrance."

P. 29, l. 960. *be hold*, be held. MS. *behold*. Stevenson suggested the alteration, which is certainly correct. 961. *withthy*, on the condition that. 965. *promyt*, promise; *als fast as*, as soon as. 973. *ferd*, fourth. 982. "Where we shall decide the end of this war."

P. 30, l. 997. *cag*, cage, prison. 999. *amen*, pleasant. 1000. *vodis*, woods. 1004. *lust*, pleasure (Ch.). But the line is obscure; unless we read "*diuersitee*." 1009. "His spirit started (owing to the) love (which) anon hath caught him," etc. 1012. *at*, that. 1014. "(As to) whom they know not at all." 1019. *sen at*, since that. 1022. *the dewod*, devoid thee. 1024. *and*, if. 1026. *be ony mayne*, by any mean.

P. 31, l. 1027. *y red*, I advise. 1035. *To warnnyng*, to warn.

1040. *our the furdis*, over the fords. 1044. *oyer*. So in MS.; the *y* representing the old *th* (þ); other. 1046. *hufyng*, halting. 1050. *worschip*, honour. "It were more expedient to maintain your honour." 1058. *wonk*, winked. 1062. *vare*, aware.

P. 32, l. 1064. The meaning of "ferst-conquest" is "first-conquered" (*conquest* being Old Fr. for conquered). It is explained in l. 1547 as having been a title given to the king whom Galiot first subdued. 1067. *ferss*, fierce. 1070. *suppos*, although. 1073. *he;* viz. the shrew. 1077. The MS. has "fched." 1080. *ymen*, I mean. 1095. *tais*, takes.

P. 33, l. 1109. *Galyoꝛ*, put for *Galiotes*, the genitive case-ending being often omitted, after a proper name especially. 1110. *prewit*, proved, tried. 1129. *traist*, trust. 1131. *that euery thing hath cure*, that (of) everything hath care.

P. 34, l. 1135. "Aye from the time that the sun began to light the world's face, until he was gone." 1137. *o forss*, perforce. 1141. *taiis*, takes. 1142. *hecht*, promised. 1151. *failȝeis*, fail. 1154. *fet*, fetched. 1156. *stant*, standeth. 1162. *resput*, respite. 1166. *very knychtis passing*, weary knights go.

P. 35, l. 1170. *till spere*, to inquire. 1177. *ne wor his worschip*, had it not been for his valour. 1187. *qwheyar*, whether. 1191—4. "And fond," etc. These four lines are now for the first time printed. They were omitted by Stevenson, evidently by accident. 1196. *Per dee*. Fr. *par Dieu:* an oath common in old ballads, generally in the form *pardy*. 1197. *vsyt*, used. 1198. "I advise that we go unto his arms" (armour). 1203. *haill*, whole.

P. 36, l. 1207. *abwsyt*, abused, i. e. made an ill use of. 1208. *vsyt*, used. 1209. *suppos the best that lewis*, even though (it were) the best that lives. 1217. *on slep*, asleep. The prefix *a-* in English is due to the Saxon *on*. 1221. *al to-hurt*, etc. See note in Glossary on the word *To-kerwith*. 1225. *sauch*, saw; *rewit*, rued, pitied. 1233. *one syd a lyt*, a little on one side. 1236. *our mekill*, over much.

P. 37, l. 1240. *yarof*, thereof. 1241. *ruput*, repute, think. 1242. *ablare*, abler, readier. 1253. Insert a comma after *thret*, and destroy that after *lowe*. The meaning perhaps is, "But what if he be appealed to and threatened, and (meanwhile) his heart be elsewhere set to love." Observe that *and* is often the third or fourth word in the sentence it should begin. See l. 2833. 1258. *ȝhe tyne yowr low*, you lose your love. 1260. *conclusit*, ended. 1265. *mokil*, much. 1268. *of new*, anew, again. 1273. *pan*, pain.

NOTES TO BOOK II.

P. 38, l. 1279. *thocht*, anxiety. 1284. *apperans*, i. e. vision, as in l. 364. 1295. *aqwynt*, acquainted; Burns uses *acquent*. 1297. *com*, coming.

P. 39, l. 1316. "So far out of the way you go in your course." Compare l. 1797. 1317. "Thy ship, that goeth upon the stormy surge, nigh of thy revels (i. e. because of thy revels) in the gulf it falls, where it is almost drowned in the peril." 1321. "In the wretched dance of wickedness." See the curious uses of the word "daunce" in Chaucer. 1323. *the son*, thee soon. 1330. *powert*, poverty; *as the-selwyne wat*, as thyself knows. 1334. *in to spousag*, in wedlock.

P. 40, l. 1343. The word *diuerss* is required to complete the line; cf. l. 731. 1352. *suppriss*, oppression. 1354. *wedwis*, widows. 1367. *that ilke*, that same. 1369. *sufferith*, makest to suffer.

P. 41, l. 1379. Eccles. iv. 9, 10. 1387. *yow mone*, thou must. 1392. *her-efter leif*, hereafter live. 1401. A comma is scarcely needed after "*sapiens*." It means "The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom." Prov. ix. 10.

P. 42, l. 1409. *to ryng wnder his pess*, to reign under His peace, by His permission. Roquefort gives *pais*, licence, permission. 1420. *arour*, error. 1427. *leful*, lawful.

P. 43, l. 1447. Ban, king of Albanak, was Lancelot's father. See l. 202, 1450. 1474. The MS. has "affit."

P. 44, l. 1491. *tak the bak apone themself*, turn their backs. 1500. *yewyne*, given. 1504. *till*, to; redundant. 1506. *stand aw*, stand in awe. So also in l. 2684. The same expression occurs in *The Bruce*, iii. 62, ed. Pinkerton, p. 42, ed. Jamieson; and also in *Havelok*, l. 277, where the word *in*, supplied from conjecture, should be struck out.

P. 45, l. 1537. *throw his peple*, by his people. 1541. *Thus falith not*, etc., "Except wise conduct falleth to a king." 1546. It may be right to retain the spelling of the MS.—"kinghe;" for, though strange and unusual, it occurs again in l. 2527.

P. 46, l. 1556. *wende*, weened. 1560. *in to his contrare*, against him. 1568. *trewis*, truce. 1575. *his powar*, his chief army. 1576. *by the yhere*, by the ear, privately. 1579. *cold*, called; as in l. 753.

P. 47, l. 1597. *home fair*, go home. 1608. *And;* redundant in modern English. For many of the precepts given by Amytans the author must have been indebted to Gower, or, at any rate, to the author of the *Secreta Secretorum*. See Gower; Conf. Amantis; ed. Pauli, lib. vii; vol. 3, pp. 152—159. And cf. Tyrwhitt's note to the Canterbury Tales, l. 16915; and Warton's Hist. Eng. Poetry.

P. 48, l. 1628. *lest*, least; *low*, law. It requires care to distinguish the two meanings of *low*, viz. *love* and *law*. 1633. *Iug*, judge.

P. 49, l. 1660. *sar*, sorely. 1666. A line omitted. The inserted line is purely conjectural.

P. 50, l. 1704. *pupelle*, people. 1708. *Inwyus*, envious. 1716. *longith*, belongeth. 1717. *the lykith*, it likes thee, thou art pleased.

P. 51, l. 1724. *betak til hyme*, confer upon him. 1730. *essy*,

easy. 1736. *for the nonis*, for the occasion. See White's Ormulum. 1739. *vn to the vorthi pur yow if*, unto the worthy poor thou give. 1742. *set nocht of gret substans*, though not of great value. 1754. *alowit*, approved of.

P. 52, l. 1761. *tynith*, loseth. 1763. *atonis*, at once. 1771. *resawe*, receive. 1773. *with two*, also.

P. 53, l. 1791. *well less, al-out*, much less, altogether. The punctuation hereabouts in Stevenson's edition is very wild. 1795. *wys*, vice; *the wrechitness*, thy miserliness. 1797. *pass the courss*, go thy way. 1808. *vrech*, wretch; but here used instead of *miser*. 1812. *viss*, vice. 1814. *ben y-knawith*, are known (to be) (?). 1815. *dant*, daunt. 1822. *the ton*, the one.

P. 54, l. 1832. *beis var*, beware. 1834. *colde*, cool. 1852. *onys*, once. 1855. *whar-throw*, through which, whereby.

P. 55, l. 1864, *awn*, own. The metre requires the more usual form *awin*. 1879. *dispolzeith*, despoileth. 1881. *For-quhi*, wherefore. In this line the MS. has "scrikth."

P. 56, l. 1899. *most nedis*, must needs. *Ye* = *the*; i. e. The one, He. 1909. *Mot*, might. 1917. *in* should be *into*, as elsewhere.

P. 57, l. 1940. *havith*, hath. 1950. *hot*, hight, is called.

P. 58, l. 1966. *wnepwnist*, unpunished. 1990. *omend*, amend; *spill*, destroy.

P. 59, l. 2011. *ayre*, are. 2012. *duclar*, declare; so also *dulay* for delay. 2017. *the god werray*, the Very God.

P. 60, l. 2036. *For-quhi*, wherefore. 2040. *mad*, made. 2041. *clergy*, science. 2062. *be the mycht dewyne*, by the might divine.

P. 61, l. 2069. *far*, fare. 2079. *helyth frome the ground*, heals from the bottom; i.e. effectually. 2100. *not sessith*, who ceaseth not.

P. 62, l. 2107. *Ne war*, were it not for; *hartly*, hearty; it occurs again four lines below. 2135. *yneuch*, enough. He means he will ask but one question more.

P. 63, l. 2148. *To passing home*, to go home. 2162. *the* xxiiij *day*. The first *i* in the MS. is like a "v" smudged over; we should read "xxiiij," as in l. 2155. The contraction is to be read *four and twentieth*, not *twenty-fourth*; so also in l. 610.

P. 64, l. 2190. *hal dure*, hall door. 2192. *o iorne most for to comend*, a journey most to be commended. 2194. *lowith*, love.

P. 65, l. 2212. *the fewar eschef thay*, the less they achieve. 2229. "For no adventure will prove so great, that ye shall not achieve it." 2241. *whill*, until.

P. 66, l. 2247. *galot*; so in MS. 2265. *grant mercy*, great thanks; Fr. *grand merci*. 2267. *quhy*, because.

P. 67, l. 2279. *thithingis*, tidings; probably an error of the scribe for *tithingis*. Stevenson has *chichingis!* 2284. *al-out*, altogether. 2304. *oft syss*, oft-times. See Glossary (*Syss*). 2306. *dante*, dainty. 2310. *tithandis*, tidings; compare l. 2279.

P. 68, l. 2323. *aw*, owe. 2328. *fantessy*, fancy, notion. 2334.

for no why, for no reason. 2337. *mon I fair*, must I go. 2338. *our son It waire*, over soon it were. 2342. *For-quhy*, because.

P. 69, l. 2352. *nor* has the force of *but*. 2366. *be ony men*, by any means. 2368. *on of tho*, one of them. 2375. *chen of low*, chain of love. 2376. *and if ȝhe may deren*, an if you may declare.

P. 70, l. 2409. *hartly raquer*, heartily require. 2416. *gar ordan*, cause to be provided.

P. 71, l. 2428. *prewaly disspone*, privily dispose. 2436. *ellis-quhat;* I suppose this means, "he was on fire *elsewhere*." 2448. *hamlynes*, homeliness. 2452. *fest throw al the ȝher eliche*, feast through all the year alike.

P. 72, l. 2469. *commend*, commended. 2470. *he drywith*, he driveth, pursueth. The reading is not *drawith*, as in Stevenson.

NOTES TO BOOK III.

P. 73, l. 2471. This line is too long, and the sense imperfect; but there is no doubt about the reading of the MS. 2474. *Awodith*, expels. 2475. *doune valis*, falls down; for it is evident that *valis* is an error for *falis*, the mistake having arisen from confusion with the succeeding line. 2480. *cled*, clad. 2487. *bygown*, begun. In the next line Stevenson has *sown;* but the true reading is *Rown*, run; as in l. 2820. 2492. *barnag*, baronage, nobility.

P. 74, l. 2522. *but dulay*, without delay; *the*, they. 2524. *thar com*, their coming. 2530. *in the dogre*, in its (due) degree.

P. 75, l. 2545. *Or that*, ere that. 2552. *he and hate*, high and hot. 2558. *the can*, they began.

P. 76, l. 2574. *hyme mak*, prepare himself; or perhaps simply, make (for the field), go. 2582. *helmys last; last* clearly means *laced;* see l. 2250. 2594. *ȝhit*, although. 2599. *dout*, fear. 2600. *is assemblit*, made an attack. The peculiar use of *assemble* must always be borne in mind. 2601. *erd*, earth.

P. 77, l. 2612. *found till gwyans*, go to Gwyans. 2614. *til esquyris thei sewyt*, after Esquyris they followed. 2619. *one to the melle socht*, made their way to the mêlée. 2627. *don bore*, borne down. 2630. Fifty thousand. It would appear that Galiot had 40,000, of whom 10,000 were held *in reserve;* so that in l. 2632 only 30,000 are mentioned. See l. 2569, 2647.

P. 78, l. 2646. *ten*, sorrow, vexation. 2656. *resauf*, receive. 2663. *at thar come*, at their coming; *led*, put down. 2670. *biding one the bent*, abide on the grassy plain.

P. 79, l. 2679. "That, despite their efforts, they must needs retire." 2684. *stud aw*, stood in awe; see note to l. 1506. 2693, 4. These lines do not rime. But we should certainly read *felde, erde* having slipped in from confusion with l. 2691. The knight of Galloway goes *to the field*, i. e. joins battle.

P. 80, l. 2712. *On ayar half*, on either side. The MS. omits *to*. 2713. *of*, off. 2714. *noiss*, nose. 2731. *Bot nocht forthi*, But not on that account.

P. 81, l. 2754. *harmys*, loss. 2761. *aucht to ses*, ought to cease. 2765. *at*, that. 2768. *my lef*, my leave, permission. 2770. *in to cage*, in prison.

P. 82, l. 2802. *commandit*, commended.

P. 83, l. 2819. *one athir half*, on either side. 2820. *rown*, run. 2821. *howyns;* an ungrammatical form; perhaps *howyng* is meant. 2827. *one hycht*, on height; i. e. aloud. 2829. *sterith*, stirreth. 2833. "The lady of Melyhalt made (her way) to him, and immediately caused his couch to be placed before a window." Mr Stevenson reads,

"Of Melyhalt the lady to hyme maid
Incontinent his couche, and gart he[1] had," etc.

i. e. "The lady immediately made his bed for him," etc. 2841. *wencust*, vanquished. After this word we should perhaps insert "at," as in l. 3336.

P. 84, ll. 2877-2880. These lines were printed by me for the first time, four lines having been here again omitted by Mr Stevenson. 2880. *but weyne*, without doubt. 2884. *to led and stere* to lead and direct.

P. 85, l. 2893. *Endlong*, along. 2894. *weryne*, were. 2913. *let*, hinder.

P. 86, l. 2925. *dulay*, delay; as in several other places. 2938. *fek*, effect. 2944. *ȝude*, went. 2947. *fair*, welfare.

P. 87, l. 2964. *Whill*, until. 2970. *ho*, stop, pause. 2971. *veryng In affray*, were in terror. 2972. *rovm*, room. 2978. *socht*, made his way. 2984. *disponit*, intends; but we must insert "not," to complete the sense and the metre.

P. 88, l. 2998. *eschevit* (used passively), is achieved. 3003. *o knycht*, a single knight. 3005. *tais*, takes. 3006. *fays*, foes. 3013. *onys or the nycht*, once ere the night. 3015. *that ȝhe have gilt to mend*, to amend that in which ye have trespassed.

P. 89, l. 3052. *Do at I may*, Do that which I can.

P. 90, l. 3065. This line is printed by Mr Stevenson,

"Curag can [ ] encresing in[1] his hart";

but it is not clear that a word is wanting, for the metre is as complete as in many other lines; whilst, as regards the sense, "the knycht" is probably a nominative without a verb, and l. 3065 means, "Courage did increase in his heart." Or the reader may, if he pleases, insert "fele." Compare l. 3058. 3066. *lap*, leaped. 3079. Observe the omission of the word "neither" in this line. 3080. *persit*, pierced. 3086. *onan*, anon. A.S. *on-án*.

[1] But the MS. has "be;" also "melyhat" instead of "Melyhalt."
[2] MS. has "to."

P. 91, l. 3093. *In samyne will*, with like intent. 3100. *bet ax-ampil*, better example. 3104. *bot*, unless; *me fall*, befall me. 3108. *one vthir*, another. 3120. *send*, sent. 3121. *lewit one*, left one. 3122. *but mercy*, without mercy.

P. 92, l. 3134. *deliuer besynes*, clever readiness. 3136. *aray*, livery. 3140. *Ee*, eye. 3146. *the morow new*, the early morning. 3160. *deith*, dead. 3162. *Suppos*, although.

P. 93, l. 3178. *Nor;* we now use *but*. 3184. *ward;* see Glossary. *tho*, then.

P. 94, l. 3200. *relewit*, relieved. 3201. *diuerss placis sere;* as *sere* = *diuerss*, one of these words is redundant. So in l. 3266. 3207. *ewil awysit*, ill advised. 3217. "And if it so happen, that they be discomfited."

P. 95, l. 3240. *leuch*, laughed; *sarues*, service. 3246. *al haill*, all whole. 3248. *x thousand mo*, ten thousand, and more. 3259. *abaid*, delay. 3263. *aucht*, eight. 3265. *petws for til her*, piteous to hear.

P. 96, l. 3297. *dreuch*, drew. 3299. *fellit*, fallen. 3304. *levyng*, leave.

P. 97, l. 3307. *sest*, ceased. 3321. *askit at*, asked of. 3331. *Wencussith*, vanquisheth. 3340. *in to one*, continually; which is sometimes the sense of A.S. *on-án*.

P. 98, l. 3353. *to fillyng*, to fulfil. 3357. *soght*, came on; see Glossary. 3359. *Ne war*, etc., "Had it not been that they were, individually, the better men." 3364. *ralef*, relieve. 3368. *fellith*, feeleth.

P. 99, l. 3384. *virslyng*, wrestling, *i. e.* entangled with; a strong expression! 3385. *assalzeing*, assail. 3390. *rowmyth*, roometh, emptieth. 3403. *departit*, parted. 3404. *dout*, fear.

P. 100, l. 3412. *left*, failed. 3423. *The lord*, i. e. Galiot, as I suppose; Mr Stevenson has, "The Lord." 3430. *stere*, to stir, move, come.

P. 101, l. 3450. *pretendit*, endeavour. 3457. *occupye*, employ. 3461. *For one hour*, etc., "On account of suffering distress for one hour." 3470. *the well less*, much less; see l. 1791. 3471. *berd*, beard. 3473. *o woyss*, one voice. 3475. *eschef frome yhow*, not, *win* from you; but, *withdraw* himself from you. See Glossary.

P. 102, l. 3481. *wend thai var no mo*, thought they were no more. 3487. *And sich enconter*, and such encounter. These three words are written at the bottom of the page as a catchword. The rest of the MS. is wanting.

GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

[As many of the words occurring in "Lancelot" are well explained either in Jamieson's Scottish Dictionary or in Roquefort's "Glossaire de la langue Romane," I have frequently referred to these works by means of the letters J. and R. Other abbreviations, as O.N. for Old Norse; Goth. for Mœso-Gothic; Su.-G. for Suio-Gothic, etc., will be readily understood. Ch. has also been used as an abbreviation for Chaucer. The various French, Danish, German, and other words referred to in the Glossary are merely added by way of illustration, to indicate in what direction a word may be most easily traced up. To ensure accuracy as far as possible, I have verified every foreign word by the aid of dictionaries, referring for Gothic words to my own Glossary, edited for the Philological Society; for Suio-Gothic words, to Ihre's Glossarium; for Icelandic words, to Egilsson; and for Old French words, to Roquefort and Burguy. Whatever errors occur below may thus, I hope, be readily traced.]

Abaid, } delay, tarrying, 1882,
Abyde, } 2147, 3069, 3308. A.S. *abídan*, J.

Abasit, } abashed, humbled, di-
Abasyt, } spirited, cast down,
Abaysit, } 378, 1452, 2664. Abasit of, dispirited by, 3301. R. *abaiser*.

Abasit of (used passively), were dispirited by, 2243.

Abraid, awoke, 1231; (Ch.) A.S. *on-bredan*.

Abwsyt (abused), made an ill use of, 1207.

Access, a fever; or better, a fit of the ague; Lat. *accessus febris*, (Wright's Glossary), 31.

Accorde, to agree with, 1526. Fr. *s'accorder*.

Accordith, is suitable for, becomes, 1679, 1951; agree therewith, 605; is useful for, is fit for, 1204.

According for, suitable for, 1512. R. *accordant*.

Adred, terrified, 378, 2664. A.S. *on-drǽdan*, to dread.

Affek, effect, 382. Cf. *Fek*.

Afferd, afraid, 3472. A.S. *afered*, *afǽran*.

Affere, warlike preparation, 985; aspect, bearing, 3043, 3334, 3394. See J., who makes it of Teutonic origin; but it may be no more than the O.Fr. *afeire*, *afaire* = state, condition; as explained by Burguy.

Afferith, belongs to, suits, 1550.

Afferis, is suitable, 1690, 1961. R. *aferer*.

Affrait, terrified, from the verb *Affray* (Ch.), 2462, 3469. R. *effraer*.

Affray, terror, fright, 636, 3454. Fr. *effroi*.

Affy in till, trust to, rely upon, 499, 1394. R. *affier.*
Afyre, on fire, 30, 251; hence, used allegorically, in love, 2436.
Agrewit, } aggrieved, vexed,
Aggrewit, } 1308, 1538; angry, enraged, 2618. R. *agrever.*
Ago, gone, 159. A.S. *of-gán.*
Aire, are, 1732.
Algait, Algat, always, 1996, 1792. Gothic *gatwô*, a street, way.
Al magre thine, in spite of thee, 115. An expression compounded of A.S. *al*, wholly; *maugre* (Fr. *mal grè*), ill-will, and *thine* (A.S. *thín*, the gen. case of *thú*, thou).
Al-out, altogether, 1676, 1791, etc.
Alowit, approved, 1754. Fr. *allouer.*
Als, (1) as; (2) also.
Amen, } pleasant, 64, 999. Lat.
Ameyne, } *amœnus.*
Anarmyt, fully armed, 545, 620, 2219, 2771. See *Enarmyt.*
And, if, 1024, 1591; and if (= an if), if, 2376.
Anerly, only, 1476, 1696. A.S. *ón-líc.*
Anoit, } annoyed, vexed, 351,
Anoyt, } 2244.
Anoyt, annoyeth, 1407.
Anterous, (for Aunterous, the shortened form of Aventurous), adventurous, 2618. Fr. *aventure.*
Aparalit, apparelled, 338.
Aperans, an appearance, a vision, 364. *So also* Apperans, 1284.
Apone, upon, 765, etc.
Appetit, desire, 2722. Ch. has *appetite* as a verb, to desire.
Aqwynt, acquainted, 1295. Burns uses *acquent.*
Aras, to pluck out, 240. Fr. *arracher.*
Araid, disordered, afflicted, 3270. See *Araye* in Halliwell. The examples there given shew that to *araye* sometimes actually signifies to *disorder.*
Arest, stop, delay, 678, 3072, 3308. Fr. *arrêt.*
Arly, early, 4, 384, 975. A.S. *árlíce.*
Artilzery, implements of warfare, 2538. See R. *artillerie.* Compare 1 Samuel, xx. 40.
Assay, (1) assault, trial, 11, 35, 112, 712; attack, 537, 2662. As a verb, to assault, attack, assail, 570, 1044. Fr. *assaillir.* (2) to essay, attempt, 2936; to test, 478, 982. Fr. *essaier.*
Assaid, } assaulted, 1224, 2641.
Assayt, }
Assall, assault, attack, 842. We should perhaps read "assaill," as in l. 855.
Assalzeing, assail (3 *pers. plural*), 3385.
Assemblay, an assembling of knights for a combat, a tournament, 267.
Assemble, a hostile meeting, combat, battle, 978, 3336. See J.
Assemblyng, encountering, 2588.
Assemblyng on, attacking, 2956.
Assey, to test, 478. *See* Assay.
Astart, to start away from; hence to escape from, avoid, 228, 3296. Ch. has *asterte.*
At, that, 1019, etc. Compare Dan. *at;* O.N. *at.*
Atour, at over, i. e. across, 841, 849, 873; in excess, in addition, besides, 1775.
Ather, either, 2629, 2819, 3264. A.S. *ægther.*
Atte, at the, 627, 1055.
Aucht, eight, 3263. Compare Ger. *acht.*
Auentur, adventure, 601.
Auer, ever, 273, etc.

Auerding to, belonging to (?), 345. The sense seems to point to the A.S. *and-weardian*, to be present, Goth. *and-wairths*, present.

Aventur, Auentoure, adventure, 80, 222.

Aw, owe, deserve; the present tense of the verb of which *ought* is the past tense; 3447. A.S. *áh*, *áhte*.

Awalk, awake, 1049. Goth. *wakan*. The form *awalk* occurs in Dunbar,

"*Awalk*, luvaris, out of your slomering."
(The Thistle and the Rose.)

Awant, boast, 2136. As a verb, 1588; and as a reflective verb, 2196, 2386. Fr. *se vanter*. Ch. has *avante*.

Awin, own, 89. A.S. *ágen*.

Awodith, maketh to depart, 2474. See *Avoid* in Nares' Glossary, edited by Halliwell and Wright.

Awow, } vow, 234, 242, 246.
Awoue, } Ch. has *avowe*.

Awys, consideration, advisement, 558.

Awyß the, advise thee, consider, 1913.

Awyß, } to consider, 424, 429.
Awyſing, } Fr. *s'aviser*.

Awysment, advisement, consideration, 360, 680.

Ay, ever, continually, 1135, 1486. A.S. *á*.

Ayar (*written instead of* Athar), either, 2712.

Ayre, are, 2011.

Ayanis, 744, } against.
Aȝanis, 1164, 2283, } A.S. *ongean*.

Aȝane, Aȝeine, again, 3253, 380.

Bachleris, bachelors; a name given to novices in arms or arts, 1689. See *bacheler* in R.

Banaris, banners, 770.

Bartes, 2897. } *See* Bertes.
Bartiis, 3041. }

Barnag, baronage, nobility, 2492. See *barniez* in R.

Batell, a battalion, division of an army, 784, 808, etc.

Be, by. A.S. *be*.

Behest, promise, 2766. A.S. *behæs*.

Behufis, behoves, 579. A.S. *behófan*, often used impersonally.

Behuß, } it behoves, it is neces-
Behwß, } sary (to do), 944, 2342; apparently contracted from *behufis*.

Beleif, *in phr.* ore belief = beyond belief, 112.

Bent, a grassy plain (properly a coarse grass; in German, *binse*), 2670. J.

Bertes, a parapet, a tower, 1007, 1118, 2815. R. *bretesche*, from Low Latin *brestachia*.

Betak til, to confer upon, 1724. A.S. *be-tǽcan*, in the sense, to assign.

Betakyne, betoken, 2014. A.S. *be-tǽcan*, in the sense, to shew.

Bewis, boughs, 338. A.S. *boh*.

Billis, letters, 142. Fr. *billet*.

Blindis, blindness (?), 1903.

Borde, to meet in a hostile manner, encounter, 809. We find in R. *border*, to joust, fight with lances. Compare Fr. *aborder*, and Spenser's use of *bord*. See *horde* in Burguy.

Bot, (1) but; (2) without. In general, *without* is expressed by *but*, and the conjunction by *bot*; but this distinction is occasionally violated.

Bown, ready, prepared, 1036. O.N. *búinn*, past part. of *búa*, to prepare. Su.-G. *boa*, to prepare. J.

Bretis, fortifications, forts, 874;

"properly wooden towers or castles: *Bretachiæ*, castella lignea, quibus castra et oppida muniebantur, Gallis *Bretesque*. Du Cange." Jamieson. See *Bertes*.

Bukis, books, 434, 1862.

Burdis, boards, i. e. tables, 2198. A.S. *bórd*, which means—1. a plank; 2. a table, etc.

Bur, bore, 733, 778.

But, without; common in the phrase *but were*, without doubt.

But if, unless, except, 958.

Byhecht, } promised, 1485, 2791.
Byhicht, } A.S. *be-hétan*.

Byknow, notorious for, known to be guilty of, 1627. Compare "I *know* nothing *by* myself" (1 Cor. iv. 4). Compare also Dan. *bekiende*, to make known.

By, near at hand, 1535, 2916.

Cag, } cage, prison, 997, 2770.
Cage, }

Can, an auxiliary verb, used nearly as we now use *did*.

Careldis, plural of Careld, a merry-making, revel (?), 1318. "*Caraude*, réjouissance;" and "*Caroler*, danser, se divertir, mener une vie joyeuse." Roquefort.

Catifis, wretches, 2102. R. *caitif*, *captif*. Compare Ital. *cattivo*.

Chalmer, chamber, 2281, 2308, 2427, 2808. J.

Chare, } chariot, 4, 735. R. *cher*.
Cher, }

Charge, load, 693. Fr. *charge*; see *discharge* in the line following (694), meaning to shake off a load.

Chargit, gave attention to, 710, 2454. Fr. *se charger de*.

Chen, chain, 2375.

Cher, car, chariot, 735. See *Chare*.

Chere, cheer, demeanour, 83, 341, 695; sad demeanour, outward grief, 2718. Fr. *chère*; compare Ital. *ciera*, the face, look. "*Wepinge* was hyr mosté *chere*." (Le Morte Arthur, l. 726.)

Cheß, choose, 1611, 1636, 2368. A. S. *ceósan*; Ger. *kiesen*; Dutch *kiezen*.

Clariouns, clarions, 771, 789.

Clepe, to call, 90, 99. A.S. *clepan*.

Clepit, callest, 93; called, 781.

Clepith, is called, 1919.

Clergy, science, knowledge, 504, 511, 2041. R. *clergie*.

Closine, closed, concluded, 316.

Closith, enclosed, shut up, 427.

Cold, called, 753, 1579.

Commandit, commended, 2802.

Comprochit, approached, 2472, 2509.

Conpilour, compiler, poet, 319.

Conquest, conquered, 574; Fyrst-conquest, first conquered, 1545, etc.

Conseruyt, preserved, 332.

Conten (used as a reflective verb), to demean oneself valorously, to maintain one's ground, 823, 1107, 1130. See R. "*contenement*, contenance, conduite, maintien, posture."

Contenit hyme, behaved himself, 3219; Contenit them, 2634.

Contenyt, endured, 3190.

Contretioun, contrition, 1415, 1426.

Contynans, demeanour, 1693, 1747.

Counter, encounter, attack, charge, 3239.

Couth, could, 793. A.S. *cunnan*; past tense, *ic cúðe*.

Cowardy, cowardice, 1023, 3287.

Cownterit, encountered, 2609, 2621. J.

Crownel, coronal, corolla of a flower, 59. J.

Cummyne, Comyne, } came, 807, 907.

Cumyne, 650, 1136, Cumyng, 447, Cummyng, 2498, } come (past part.).

Cunyng, knowledge, 1455.

Cusynace, 1270, Cusynece, 2802, Cusynes, 2287, Cwsynes, 1185, } kinswoman.

Cwre, care, 98, 266, 643. Lat. *cura*. (N.B. Though *Cwre* = *cura*, yet *cura* should be distinguished from A.S. *cearu*.)

Danger, power to punish; "the power of a feudal lord over his vassals," (Wright), 444. Also, power to injure, 3006. See R. *dangier*.

Dans, (dance), in the phrase "wrechit dans," evil mode of life, 1321. See Chaucer's use of *daunce;* and compare—

"I sai ȝow lely how thai lye
Dongen doun alle in a *daunce*."

Lawrence Minot; quoted in Specimens of Early English, by R. Morris; p. 194.

Dede, 90, Ded, 3304, } death. Dan. *död*. A.S. *deáð*. O.N. *dauðr*.

Deden, deign, 949. J.

Dedenyt, deigned, 240.

Deid, died, 215.

Deith, dead (past part.), 3160.

Delitable, delightful, 1738. R. *delitable*.

Deliuer, nimble, clever, 3134.

Deliuerly, (cleverly), nimbly, lightly, 3089, 3131. R. *delivre*.

Demande, demur, 191, 397, 3052, 3354. See R. "*demander*, contremander, changer, revoquer l'ordre donné."

Depart, to part, 3421. R. *departir*.

Departit, parted, 3403.

Depaynt, painted, 46, 1703. Fr. *dépeint*. Ch. *depeint*.

Depend me, waste or consume (my powers), 214; possibly miswritten for *despend*. Cf. *Dispendit*. Depend to, to concern, appertain to, 466.

Deren, to speak out, tell, 2376. R. *derainier*.

Dereyne, a plea, 2313; "haith o dereyne ydoo," hath appealed to trial by combat. R. *derainier*.

Des, daïs, high table, 2762. R. *deis;* Lat. *discus*.

Deuit, availed, 18. See note.

Devith, Dewith, } deafen, 92, 94. "Su.-G. *deofwa;* Icel. *deyfa*," J. Compare Dan. *döve*. Burns has *deave*.

Dewod the, devoid thyself, 1022.

Deuoydit was = departed, 1031. Compare *Awodith*.

Dewyß, to tell, narrate, 373.

Discharg, to put aside one's liability, 163, 1665.

Diseß, lack of ease, misery, 707.

Disiont (Disioint?), disjointed, out of joint; hence uncertain, hazardous, 2907. "Disjoint, A difficult situation." Halliwell.

Dispendit, spent, 1808. R. *despendre*.

Dispens, expenditure, 1746. Fr. *dépense*.

Dispoȝeith, despoileth, 1879

Dispone, to dispose, provide; or, as a reflective verb, to be disposed to do, to intend, 54, 446, 980, 1590, 2428, 2462.

Disponit, declines (?); but much more probably, intends; and we must read "disponit not," 2984.

Dout, fear, 2599, 3404, 3438; (as a verb), to fear, 740, 1827. Ch. *doute*. R. *doubtance*.

Drent, drowned, 1319. A.S. *drencan*.

Dreſ (as a reflective verb), to direct oneself, proceed, go, 1975, 2288, 2486. Lat. *dirigere.*

Drywith, drives; "he drywith to the end," i.e. concludes, 2470.

Duclar, declare, 3022.

Dulay, delay, 681, 788, 2925.

Effere, shew, pomp, 2360. Compare *Affere.*

Efter, after, 217. A.S. *efter.*

Eld, old age, 3225, 3242. A.S. *yldo.* Gothic *alds.*

Elyk, Eliche, alike, 182, 2452.

Eme, uncle, 2572. A.S. *eám.*

Empit, emptied, empty, 180. A.S. *æmtian.*

Empleſ, to please, 2455. J.

Empriſ, worth, honour, 129, 269, 3458; *cf.* Romans of Partenay, l. 2013. Anxiety, oppression, 393. R. *emprindre.*

Enarmyt, fully armed, 285, 751, 2499. J.

Endit, indited, 138; indite, 206; inditing, poem (?), 334. If the meaning were, "this ends," the form "endis" would be required; besides which, the rime shews that the *i* is long; cf. ll. 138, 206.

Endlong, along, 2893. A.S. *andlang;* Ger. *entlang.*

Entent, intention, will, meaning, thoughts, 448, 1451, 1499, 2938. R. *entente.* Used by Chaucer.

Entermet, to intermeddle with, to have do with, 2914. R. *entremetre.*

Enweronyt, environed, 53.

Erde, earth, 1072, 1540, 2601. Compare Ger. *erde.*

Erdly, earthly, 498.

Erith, earth, 128. A.S. *eorðe.*

Eschef (1. eschew), to shun, withdraw himself, 3475. R. *eschever;* (2. achieve), to accomplish, 2212, 2513. R. *eschavir.* Eschef deith, to die, 2732.

Escheuit, achieved, 258.

Eschevit, is achieved, 2998.

Eſ, 174, } ease.
Eeſ, 706, }

Essenȝeis (ensigns), warcries, 3349, J. See also R. *enseigne.*

Euerilkon, every one, 1039, etc.

Exasy, extasy, 76. (Possibly miswritten.)

Exortith, beseecheth, 3026.

Extend, attain, 3281.

Failȝeis, fail, (3 pers. plu. indicative), 1151.

Fairhed (fairhood), beauty, 577. In A.S. *fægernes*, but in Dan. *förhed.*

Fall, to happen, befall, 493, 2139. A.S. *feallan;* Dan. *falde.*

Fallyng, fallen, 1217, 1322.

Falowschip, used as we now use company, 1105, 2687, etc.

Falȝeing, failing, 1499.

Falȝet, Falȝheit, failed, 1460, 1469, 1498, 1503.

Farhed, beauty, 2440. See *Fairhed.*

Fayndit (feigned), dissembled, 2397.

Fays, foes, 3006. A.S. *fáh.*

Fechtand, fighting, 2691, 3127, 3407. Ger. *fechten.*

Fechteris, fighters, 686.

Feill, knowledge, skill, 2854. J. A.S. *félian.*

Fek (effect), sum, amount, result, drift, 2938. Fr. *effet.*

Fell, to feel, 820, 2131.

Fellith, feeleth, 3368.

Fell, many; als fell, as many, 768. A.S. *féala;* Gothic *filu.*

Fell, horrible, 260. A.S. *fell,* cruel, fierce.

Ferde, fourth, 815, 973, 2285. Compare Dan. *fierde.*

Ferleit, wondered, 3117. A.S. *fǽr-líc*, sudden, fearful. Burns has *ferlie*.
Fet, fetched, 433, 1154. A.S. *feccan*, past tense, *ic feahte*.
Fongith, catcheth, seizeth, 1922. A.S. *fangan*; Goth. *fahan*.
Forfare, to fare amiss, to perish, 1348. A.S. *for-faran*.
Forlorn, lost, 3305. A.S. *forloren*; cf. Goth. *fra-liusan*.
For-quhy; see *For-why*.
For-thi, } (there-fore), on that ac-
For-thy, } count, 332, 2261, 2731. A.S. *forthý*; where *thý* (Gothic *thê*) is the instrumental case of *se*, that.
For-wrocht (for-wrought), overworked, wearied out, 888. A.S. *forwyrcan*.
For-why, 798, 925, 2209, } for
For-quhy, 2171, 2342, 2290, } the reason that, because that.
Found, to advance, go, 2612. J. A.S. *fundian*, to try to find, go forward.
Franchis, generosity, 230. R. *franchise*.
Fremmytneſs, strangeness, alienation, 1508. A.S. *fremdnes*.
Froit, enjoyment, 1644; fruit, 2088, 2109. R. *fruit*.
Frome, from the time that, 17, 1432. Goth. *frums*, a beginning.
Fruschit, broken, dashed in pieces, 1201. R. *frois*, broken; from the verb *froier*.
Fundyne, 497, } found (past
Fundyng, 465, } part.).
Fyne, faithful, true, 519. See R. "*fine*, fidéle;" and "*fine*, foi."
Fyne, end, 1388, 2081. Fr. *fin*.

Ganith, is suitable for, 991. Icel. *gegna*. J. Compare Dan. *gavne*.
Ganyth, it; it profits; *used impersonally*, 121. R. *gaagner*.
Gare, to cause, 910, 2416. Dan. *giöre*; Icel. *göra*.
Gart, caused, 267, 2777.
Gentilleſs, 917, 1847. See *Gentrice*.
Gentrice, 130, 2757, } courtesy,
Gentriſs, 2790. } nobleness. R. *gentilesse*.
Gere, gear, equipment, armour, 2777. A.S. *gearwa*.
Gert, 384. See *Gart*.
Giffis, give thou, (lit. give *ye*, the plural being used in addressing the king), 463. A.S. *gifan*.
Gifyne, given, 1752.
Gilt, offended, done wrong, 699, 3015. A.S. *gyltan*.
Grewhundis, greyhounds, 533, 537. "O.N. *grey*, *grey-hundr*, a bitch." Wedgwood.
Gowerne the, conduct thyself, 1598.
Grawis, groves, 2481. Ch. *greves*.
Gyrſs, grass, 10. A.S. *gærs*.
Gyſs, guise, fashion, custom, 545. Ch. *gise*.

Haade, had, 2150.
Habariowne, habergeon, 2889. From *haubergeon*, the French form of Ger. *halsberge*. See *Hawbrek*.
Habirioune, habergeon, 3380.
Heill, whole, 3246. A.S. *hœl*.
Haknay, an ambling horse for a lady, 1730. R. *hacquenée*.
Half; *in the phrase* on arthuris *half*, i. e. on Arthur's *side*, 883. Compare use of Germ. *halb*.
Halk, a hawk, 1736, 2482. A.S. *hafoc*.
Hall, }
Hoil, } various spellings of Haill,
Holl, } whole.
Hail, }
Hals, neck, 1054. A.S. *hals*. Goth. *hals*.

Hant, to exercise, practise, 2191. Fr. *hanter*, lit. to frequent.

Hardement, 801, 2669, } hardi-
Hardyment, 900, 3362, } hood, boldness. R. *hardement*.

Harrold, herald, 1047.

Hate, hot, 2552.

Havith, hath, 1940; have, 3404.

Hawbrek, 1070, 1200, } hauberk,
Hawbryk, 3112, } neck-defence; Ger. *hals-berge*, armour for the neck.

Hawnt, to use, 3418. See *Hant*.

Hawntis, exercise, 2772.

He, high, 1969, 2552. A.S. *háh*.

Hecht, hight, is called, 2140; was called, 2290.

Hecht, to promise, 3101; promised (*past part.*), 1142. A.S. *hátan*.

Hedis, heads, 538, 869.

Hewy, 442, } heavy. A.S. *hefig*.
Heuy, 459, }

Hie, 550, } high. See *He*.
Hye, 297, }

Hienes, highness, 126.

Ho, pause, stop, cessation, 2970. According to J. radically the same with the verb *Houe*, or *How* (see *Houit*). The Dutch, however, use *hou*, hold! from *houden*, to hold.

Holl, whole, 106, 745.

Hore, hair, 365.

"Holȝe were his yȝen and vnder campe hores."

(Early English Alliterative Poems; *ed.* Morris. See Poem B. l. 1695.) The meaning of the line quoted is, "Hollow were his eyes, and under bent hairs."

Hot, hight, was called, 754, 806; is called, 1950. A.S. *hátan* (neuter).

Houit, delayed, tarried, halted, 996. "W. *hofian, hofio*, to fluctuate, hover, suspend," Morris.

Hovith, stays, halts, 2829.

Howit, halted, 2814, 2842.

Howyns, halts, tarries, 2821. Probably miswritten for "howyng."

Hufyng, halting, delaying, 1046.

Hundyre, a hundred, 756, 1554.

I, in, 332. Dan. *i*; Icel. *í*.

Iclosit, y-closed; i. e. enclosed, shut in, 53.

If, to give, 554. In lines 1718-1910 the word occurs repeatedly in several forms; as *iffis, iffith*, giveth; *iffis*, give ye (put for give thou); *ifyne*, given, etc.

Ifyne, to give, 3454.

Iftis, gifts, 1741. In the line preceding we have *giftis*.

Ilk; the ilk (= thilk) that, 629, 1601. Literally, the ilk = the same. A.S. *ylc*. See 1367.

Ilk, each, 2211, etc. A.S. *ælc*.

Illumynare, luminary, 3.

Incontinent, } immediately, 253,
Incontynent, } 1215, 2647, 2834. Still used in French.

In-to-contynent (= Incontinent), 3020.

In to, used for "in;" *passim*.

Iornaye, journey, 680.

Irk, to become slothful, grow weary, tire, 2709. A.S. *eargian*.

Iuperty, combat, 2547. Fr. *jeu parti*, a thing left undecided; hence the meanings, 1. strife, conflict; 2. jeopardy, as in Ch. See J.; and Tyrwhitt's note to C.T. 16211.

Iwond, 245, } wounded. We
Iwondit, 226, } find in A.S. both *wúnd* and *wúnded*.

I-wyß, certainly, of a surety, 1709, 1925, 1938. A.S. *gewís*; Ger. *gewiss*. Often *wrongly* in-

terpreted to mean, *I know*. See *Wit*.

Kend, known, 548, 906.

Laif, the remainder (lit. what is *left*), 1802, 3472. A.S. *láf*. Burns has "the *lave*."

Lametable, lamentable, 3265. The omission of the *n* occurs again in l. 2718, where we have *lemytable*.

Larges, liberality, 608, 1681, 1750. Fr. *largesse*.

Larg, prodigal, profuse, 2434.

Lat, impediment, 958. A.S. *lǽtan*, means (1) to suffer, (2) to hinder.

Lat, to let, permit (used as an auxiliary verb), 803.

Latith, preventeth, 1927.

Lawrare, a laurel, 82. Ch. *laurer*.

Learis, liars, 493.

Led, put down, beat down, depressed, overpowered, 2663. It is the past tense of A.S. *lecgan*, to lay, to cause to submit, to kill.

Lef, to live, 564, 3230.

Leful, lawful, 1427.

Legis, lieges, subjects, 1957. R. *lige*; Lat. *ligatus*.

Leich, leech, physician, 106. A.S. *lǽce*; Dan. *læge*. See 520, 2056.

Leif, to live, 952, 1392. A.S. *lybban*; Goth. *liban*.

Leir, to learn, 1993. Comp. D. *leeren*.

Lest, to list, to please, 555, 621. A.S. *lystan*.

Lest, to last out against, sustain, 811. A.S. *lǽstan*.

Lest, least, 1628.

Let, hindrance, 2495.

Leuch, laughed, 3240. A.S. *hlihan*, past tense *ic hloh*.

Lewis, liveth, 1209.

Lewith, left, deserted, 1854.

Liging, 376. The sense requires *lay*, i. e. the *3rd p. s. pt. t. indic.*, but properly the word is the present participle, *lying*.

Longith, belongeth, 738, 1921, 2429, 2778. Compare Dan. *lange*, to reach.

Longith, belonged, 3242.

Longyne, belonging, 433.

Lorn, lost, 2092; destroyed, 2740. See *For-lorn*.

Loß, praise, 1777. Lat. *laus*. Ch. has *losed*, praised.

Low, } (1) law, 1602, 1628, 1636,
Lowe, } etc. (2) love, 29, 1620. It is sometimes hard to say which is meant. Compare Dan. *lov*, law; A.S. *luf*, love.

Luges, tents, 874, 881, 2500, 2680. Fr. *loge*, *logis*; Ger. *laube*, a bower, from *laub*, foliage; Gothic *laúf*, a leaf.

Lugyne, a lodging, tent, 891.

Lyt, a little, 1233. At lyte, in little, used as an expletive, 143.

Ma; short form of Make, 953.

Maad, made, 697.

Magre of, in spite of, 500, 960, 2679, 2702, 2711. Sometimes "magre" is found without "of." Fr. *mal gré*.

Matalent, } displeasure, anger,
Matelent, } 2169, 2660. In both cases Mr Stevenson wrongly has *maltalent*. R. *maltalent*, *mautalent*.

Mayne, 1026. See *Men*.

Medyre, mediator (?), 1624. I am not at all sure of this word, but we find in R. many strange forms of "mediator," such as *méener*, *méeisneres*, etc. In the Supplement to the "Dictionnaire de l'Academie" we find *mediaire*, qui occupe le milieu, from Low Lat. *mediarius*. N.B.

In the MS. the "d" is indistinct. See *mediare* in Ducange.

Meit, to dream, 363. A.S. *mætan.*

Mekill, much, 876, 1236. Mokil, 1265.

Melle, contest, battle, 2619. Fr. *melée*, J.

Memoratyve, mindful, bearing in remembrance, 1430. Fr. *mémoratif.*

Men, mean, way; "be ony men" = by any means, 2366; so, too, "be ony mayne," 1026. Fr. *moyen.*

Men, to tell, declare, 510. A.S. *mænan.*

Menye, a company, multitude (without special reference to number); whence "a few menye," a small company, 751. Apparently from A.S. *menigu;* Ger. *menge;* but it may have nothing to do with the modern word *many*, and is more probably from the O.F. *maisnée*, a household.

Met, dreamt, 440. See *Meit.*

Meyne, 41. See *Men.*

Misgyit, misguided, 1663. R. *guier.*

Mo, more, 3187, etc. A.S. *má.*

Mon, man, 96.

Moneth, month, 569. A.S. *mónaþ;* Goth. *menoth.*

Morow, morning, 1, 30, 64, 341. Goth. *maúrgins.*

Mot, must, 195. A.S. *ic mót.*

Mys, a fault, 1888, 1937, 3230. A.S. *mis.* Do o myß, to commit a fault, 1926.

Mysour, measure, 1830.

Myster, need, 1877, 2322. Ch. *mistere;* R. *mester;* Lat. *ministerium.* Cf. Ital. *mestiere.*

Nat, naught, 703. Shortened from A.S. *ná wuht*, i.e. *no whit.*

Nece, nephew, 2200, 2245, 2720. R. *niez.*

Nedlyngis, of necessity, 2337, J. A.S. *neádinga.*

Nemmyt, considered, estimated, 649, 2852. A.S. *nemnan*, to name, call.

Ner, near, 441.

Neulyngis, newly, again, 36, J. A.S. *níwe-líce* (?).

Newis, for Nevis, nieves, fists, 1222. Icel. *hnefi.* Dan. *nœve.* Burns has *nieve;* Shakspeare *neif.*

Noght, not, 1182.

Noiß, nose, 2714. R. *néis.*

Nome, name, 226, 320, 1546, 3341. Fr. *nomme.*

Nome, took, 591, 1048. A.S. *niman*, past tense, *ic nám.*

Northest, north-east, 677.

Not (shortened from Ne wot), know not, 522, 3144. A.S. *nát*, from *nitan* = *ne witan.*

Not, naught, 720. See *Nat.*

Noyith, annoyeth, 904. Fr. *nuire.* Lat. *nocere.*

Noyt, annoyed, offended, 471.

Nys, Nyce, (nice), foolish, 127, 1946. Fr. *niais.*

O, a, an, *passim;* one, a single, 2998, 3003, 3393, etc.

Obeisand, obedient, 641.

Obeß, obey, 2134.

Oblist, obliged, 969.

Occupye, to use, employ, 3457; to dwell, 75. Lat. *occupare.*

Of, with, 66.

Oft-syß, oft-times, 2304, 2594, 2789, 2885, 2929. See *Syß.*

On, and, 519. Possibly a mistake.

One, on, often used for In; One to = unto.

Onan, Onone, Onon, anon, 158, 1466, 2602, etc. The form "onan," l. 3086, suggests the

derivation of *anon;* viz. from A.S. *on-án*, in one; hence, forthwith, immediately.

Onys, once, at some time or other, 3013; at onys, at once, 3187.

Opin, 1286, } open.
Opine, 13, }

Or, ere, before, 77, 1887, 2545. A.S. *ǽr.*

Ordand, to set in array, 784; to prepare, procure, 1713. R. *ordener;* Lat. *ordinare.*

Ordan, to provide, 2416, 2777.

Ordynat, ordained, 490. See l. 507.

Orest (=Arest), to arrest, stop, 3186.

Orient, east, 5.

Oucht, it; it is the duty of (= Lat. *debet*), 2995. Strictly, we should here have had "it owes" (*debet*), not "it ought" (*debuit*). See *Aw.*

Ourfret, over-adorned, decked out, 71, 2480. A.S. *frætwian*, to trim, adorn.

Out-throng (= Lat. *expressit*), expressed, uttered, 65. A.S. *út*, out, and *þringan*, to press.

Owtrag, outrage, 3454. R. *outrage;* Ital. *oltraggio*, from Lat. *ultra.* The MS. has *outray*, probably owing to confusion with *affray* in the same line. We find "owtrag" in l. 2578.

Oyß, to use, 1701, J.

Paid, pleased; ill paid, displeased, 908. Low Lat. *pagare*, to pay, satisfy.

Palȝonis, pavilions, tents, 734; *plural of*

Palȝoune, a pavilion, a tent, 1305. R. gives *pavillon*, a tent; cf. Low Lat. *papilio*, a tent.

Pan, pain, 1273.

Pas hyme, to pace, go, 362.

Paß, to go, 1213.

Pasing, pacing, departing, 371; surpassing, 303, 346, 689, etc.

Pens, to think of, 1431. Fr. *penser.*

Planly, at once, 3319. J. gives "Playn, out of hand, like Fr. *de plain.*" In the same line "of" = off.

Plant, plaint, complaint, 137. Fr. *plainte.*

Plesance, Plesans, pleasure, 941, 1939.

Plessith, pleases, 68.

Possede, to possess, 578. Fr. *posseder.*

Poware, a power, a strong band of men, 2647. We now say *force.*

Powert, poverty, 1330, 1744.

Pref, to prove, 2229, 3476.

Prekand, pricking, spurring, 3089. See the very first l. of Spenser's *Faerie Queene.*

Prekyne, 2890, showy (?), gaudy (?). J. gives "Preek, to be spruce; to crest; as 'A bit *preekin* bodie,' one attached to dress; *to prick*, to dress oneself." Compare D. *prijcken.*

Pretend, to attempt, aspire to, 3282, 3465. Fr. *prétendre.* So, too, in lines 559, 583.

Pretendit, endeavour, attempt, 3442.

Process, narration, 316. Wright gives "Proces, a story or relation, a process." The writer is referring to his prologue or introduction.

Promyt, to promise, 965.

Proponit, proposed, 361, 445.

Pupil, people, 285.

Puple, people, 1367, 1498, 1520.

Pur, 1648, }
Pure, 1697, } poor.
Pwre, 1655, }

Quh-. Words beginning thus begin in modern English with Wh. Thus, Quhen = when, etc.

Quhilk (whilk), which, 184. A.S. *hwylc* = Lat. *qualis* rather than *qui*.

Quhill, while, *used as a noun*, 1229, 1293. A.S. *hwíl*, a period of time.

Quhill, until, 24, 198. See *Whill*.

Quhy; the quhy = the why, the reason, 123, 1497.

Qwhelis, wheels, 736. A.S. *hweol*.

Qwheyar, whether, 1187.

Quhois, Qwhois, whose, 171, 1297.

Rachis, hounds, 531. Su-G. *racka*, a bitch, which from the v. *racka*, to race, course. Perhaps connected with *brach*.

Radur, fear, 1489, J. From Su-G. *rædd*, fearful; Dan. *ræd*.

Raddour, 2133, Radour, 1835, 3465, fear.

Raid, rode, 3070, 3260, etc.

Ralef, relieve, 3364.

Ramed, remedy, 117. See *Remed*.

Randoune, in, 2542. The corresponding line (l. 739) suggests that *in Randoune = al about*, i.e. in a circuit. But if we translate it by "in haste," or "in great force," we keep nearer to the true etymology. In Ogilvie's Imperial Dictionary, *s.v.* Random, we find the Nor. Fr. *randonnée* explained to mean the "sweeping circuit made by a wounded and frightened animal;" but the true meaning of *randonnée* is certainly *force, impetuosity;* see R., Cotgrave, etc. In Danish, *rand* is a surrounding edge or margin; while in Dutch we find *rondom* round about.

Raquer, require, 2409.

Raß, race, swift course, 3088. A.S. *rés*. Compare Eng. *mill-race*, and D. *ras*.

Recidens, delay, 2359. R. *residier*, to defer.

Recist, resist, 566, 660, 2578.

Recounterit, met (in a hostile manner), encountered, 2958. Fr. *rencontrer*.

Record, witness, testimony; hence value, 388. R. *record*.

Recorde, to speak of, mention; hard recorde, heard say, 121, 595.

Recorde, speak out, 454, 481. See R. *recorder*.

Recordith, is suitable, belongs, 606.

Recourse, to return, 1798. Lat. *recurrere*.

Red, to advise, 1027, 1198. A.S. *rædan;* Goth. *rêdan*.

Relewit (relieved), lifted up again, rescued, 2617. Fr. *relever*. J.

Remede, 89, Remed, 718, remedy.

Remuf, remove, 655.

Report, to narrate, 266; to explain, 294; to state, 320.

Reprefe, reproof, defeat, 764.

Reput, he reputed, i.e. thought, considered, 743.

Resauit, received, 2796.

Resawit, received, kept, 2106. We should have expected to find "reseruit."

Resonite, resounded, 66.

Resydens, delay 670. See *Recidens*.

Revare, 275, Rewar, 2893, Rewere, 2812, river.

Reweyll, proud, haughty, 2853. R. *revelé*, fier, hautain, orgueilleux. Compare Lat. *rebellare*.

Richwysneß, righteousness, 1406. A.S. *rihtwísnes*.

Rigne, 94, 1527, } a kingdom. Fr.
Ring, 1468, } *régne.* Ch.
Ringe, 1325, } *regne.*
Rignis, kingdoms, 1858.
Rignis, Rignith, reigneth, 1825, 782.
Ringne, a kingdom, 1952.
Rout, a company, a band, 812, 2956, 3403. Rowt, 2600.
Rowmyth, roometh, i.e. makes void, empties, 3390. A.S. *rúmian.*
Rown, run; *past part.* 2488, 2820.
Rwn, run, 2545.
Rygnis, kingdoms, 1904.
Ryne, to run, 113. See 2952.
Ryng, to reign, 1409, 2130.

Sa, so, 3322, 3406. Dan. *saa.*
Saade, said, 698.
Salust, saluted, 546, 919, 1553, 2749. Ch. *salewe.*
Salosing, salutation, 1309.
Sar, sorely, 1660.
Sauch, saw, 817, 1219, 1225. A.S. *ic seáh*, from *seón.*
Schawin, shewn, 2387.
Schent, disgraced, ruined, 1880. A.S. *scendan;* Dan. *skiœnde.*
Schrewit, accursed, 1945.
Scilla, the name of a bird, also called Ciris, 2483.

—— "plumis in avem mutata vocatur Ciris, et a tonso est hoc nomen adepta capillo."—(Ovid, Met. viii. 150.)

Screwis, shrews, ill-natured persons, 1053. More often used of males than females in old authors.
Sedulis, letters, 142. R. *cedule.*
Sege, a seat, 2258. Fr. *siége.*
Semble, a warlike assembly, hostile gathering, 988, 2206.
Semblit, assembled, 845. G. *sammeln;* from Goth. *sama, samana.*
Semblyng, encountering, 2951. See *Assemble.*
Sen, since, 709, 800, etc. Sen at, since that. In Piers Plowman we find *syn.*
Septure, sceptre, 666.
Sere, several, various, 594, 731, 746. "Su-G. *sær*, adv. denoting separation." J. Cf. Lat. *se-.*
Sess, to cease, 14, etc. Fr. *cesser.*
Set, although.
Sew, to follow up, seek, 2326. R. *suir;* Fr. *suivre.*
Sew, to follow up, go, proceed, 3145. Sewyt, 2614.
Shauyth, shewith, 412.
Sice, such, 2115. Scotch, *sic.*
Snybbyth, snubs, checks, 3387. Comp. D. *sneb*, a beak; *snebbig*, snappish.
Sobing, sobbing, moaning, 2658.
Socht, } sought to go; and hence,
Soght, } made his (or their) way, proceeded, went, 2619, 3179, 3357, 3428. Sought one, advanced upon, attacked, 3149, 3311. Sought to, made his way to, 3130. A.S. *sécan*, past tense *ic sóhte*, to seek, approach, go towards.
Sor, sorrow, anxiety, 74. A.S. *sorh;* Goth. *saúrga.*
Sort, lot, fate, 26. Fr. *sort.*
Sound, to be consonant with, 149. See Gloss. to Tyrwhitt's Chaucer. Lat. *sonare.*
Soundith, 1811. "So the puple soundith," so the opinion of the people tends.

"As fer as *souneth* into honestee."
(Chaucer: *Monkes Prologue.*)

Soundith, tend, 1943; tends, 149.
Sown, sound, 1035. Fr. *son.*
Sownis, sounds, 772, 3436.
Spent, fastened, clasped, 2809. A.S. *spannan*, to clasp, join. Comp. Dan. *spœnde*, to stretch, span, buckle together.

Spere, } sphere, 6, 170; speris,
Spir, } spheres, circuits, 24.
Spere, to inquire, 1170. A.S. *spirian*, to track. Cf. G. *spur*.
Sperithis, spear's, 810.
Spill, to destroy, ruin, 1990. A.S. *spillan*.
Spreit, spirit, 81, 364.
Stak, 226. J. gives "to the steeks, *completely*;" and this is the sense here. See Jamieson: s.v. "Steik." Halliwell gives *stake*, to block up; also *steck*, a stopping place (cf. Shakespeare's *sticking-place*, Macb. i. vii. l. 60). In the N. of France it is said of one killed or severely wounded, *il a eu son estoque*, he has had his belly-ful; from *estoquer*, to cram, satiate, "stodge." Compare Ital. *stucco*, cloyed. It has also been suggested that *to the stak* may mean to the *stock*, i.e. up to the hilt, very deeply.
Start, started up, leapt, 994, 1094.
Stede, stead, place, 218, 1124. A.S. *stede*.
Steir, to stir, 817. A.S. *stirian*.
Stekith, shuts, 1651. Ger. *stecken*. Burns has *steek*.
Stek, shut, concluded, 316.
Stell, steel, 809. Stell commonly means a stall, or fixed place; but the form *stell* for *steel* occurs; e.g. "Brounstelle was heuy and also kene." *Arthur*, l. 97.
Sterapis, 3056, } stirrups. A.S.
Steropis, 3132, } *stí-rap* or *stígeráp*, from *stígan*, to mount, and *ráp*, rope.
Stere, ruler, arbiter, 1020; control, guidance, 1974.
Stere, to rule, control, 1344, 2884, A.S. *stýran*.
Stere, to stir, move, go, 3430. See *Steir*.
Sterith, stirreth, 2829.
Sterf, to die, 1028. A.S. *steorfan*.
Sterit, governed, 612. A.S. *stýran*.
Stert, started, 377.
Stok, the stake to which a baited bear is chained, 3386.
Stour, conflict, 1108, 2607, 3124. R. *estour*.
Straucht, stretched out, 3090. A.S. *streccan*, past part. *gestreht*.
Strekith, stretcheth, i.e. exciteth to his full stride, 3082.
Subiet, 1799, } subject; sub-
Subeitis, 1828, } jects.
Subiettis, 1878, }
Sudandly, Sodandly, suddenly, 1009, 1876.
Suet, sweet, 331.
Suppris, (surprise), overwhelming power, 691, 860, 2651; oppression, 1352. Fr. *surprendre*, to catch unawares.
Supprisit, overwhelmed, 1237, 1282; overpowered, 2705, 3208. Supprisit ded, suddenly killed, 3125.
Surryȝenis, surgeons, 2726.
Suth, sooth, true, 110. A.S. *sóð*.
Suthfastnes, truth, 1183. A.S. *sóðfæstnes*.
Sutly, soothly, truly, 963.
Swelf, a gulf such as is in the centre of a whirlpool, a vortex, 1318, J. A.S. *swelgan*, to swallow up.
Sweuen, a dream, 440. A.S. *swefn*.
Swth, sooth, true, 2753. See *Suth*.
Syne, 2026, } sin.
Synne, 2029, }
Syné, afterwards, next. J. 45, 794, etc.
Syſ, times, 3054. A.S. *síð*.

Tais, 1095, 3005, } takes. Abbre-
Taiis, 1141. } viated, as "ma" is from "make." See *Ma.*

Tane, taken, 264.

Ten, grief, vexation, 2646, 3237. A.S. *teonan,* to vex.

Tennandis, tennants, vassals holding fiefs, 1729. R. *tenancier.*

Than, then, 3111.

The, (1) they, (2) thee, (3) thy.

Thelke, that, 709. See l. 629, where *the ilk* occurs; and see *Ilk.*

Thir, these, those, 2734, 2745, 2911, 3110, etc.

Thithingis, tidings, 2279. A.S. *tidan,* to happen.

Tho, then, 545, 2221; them, 2368.

Thoore, there, 628. Thore, 1102.

Thrid, third, 370, 2347, 2401. A.S. *þridda.*

Throng, closely pressed, crowded, 3366. A.S. *þringan.*

Til, to; til have, to have, 706.

Tint, lost, 1384. See *Tyne.*

Tithandis, tidings, 2310.

Tithingis, tidings, 902, 2336.

To, too, besides, 3045.

Togidder, together, 254.

To-kerwith, carves or cuts to pieces; al to-kerwith, cuts all to pieces, 868. A.S. *to-ceorfian.* The prefix *to-* is intensive, and forms a part of the verb. See Judges ix. 53: "All to-brake his skull;" i.e. utterly brake; sometimes misprinted "all to break" (!).

Ton, taken, 1054, 1071.

Ton, one; the ton, the one, 1822. The tone = A.S. *þæt áne.*

To-schent, disfigured, 1221. The intensive form of the A.S. verb *scendan,* to shame, destroy. In the same line we have *to-hurt,* and in the next line *to-rent,* words modelled on the same form. We find, e.g., in Spenser, the forms *all to-rent, all to-brus'd.* (See the note on the prefix *To-* in the Glossary to William of Palerne.)

Tothir, the other, 2536. The tothir = A.S. *þæt oþere,* where *þæt* is the neuter gender of the definite article. Burns has *the tither.*

Toyer (= tother), the other; *y* being written for the A.S. *þ* (*th*), 2571, 2584.

Traist, to trust, to be confident, 390, 1129, 1149, J. Trast, 1659.

Traisting of (trusting), reliance upon, or expectation of, 25, J.

Translat, 508, } to transfer, re-
Transulat, 2204, } move.

Tratory, treachery, 3224. See R. *traïtor.*

Trety, treatise, 145. Fr. *traité.*

Trewis, truce, 1568, 2488, 2545.

Tronsione, 239, } a trun-
Trunscyoune, 2962, } cheon, a
Trownsciown, 2890, } stump of a spear. Fr. *tronçon;* from Lat. *truncus.* In the last passage it means a sceptre, *bâton.*

"One hytte hym vpon the oldé wounde
Wyth A tronchon of an ore;" (oar.)
(Le Morte Arthur, l. 3071.)

Troucht, truth, 161.

Tuecching, 403, } touching.
Tweching, 386, }

Tyne, to lose, 1258, 1387. Icel. *týna.*

Tynith, loseth, 1761.

Tynt, lost, 175, 1384, 1521.

Unwist, unknown, 1140.

Valis, falls; we should read "falis," 2475.

Valkyne, to waken, 8. See *Awalk*

Vall, billow, wave, 1317. Ger. *welle,* a wave; *quelle,* a spring;

Icel. *vella*, to *well* up, boil. Cf. also A.S. *wæl;* Du. *wiel;* Lancashire *weele*, an eddy, whirlpool. So, too, in Burns:—

"Whyles owre a linn the burnie plays,
As thro' the glen it wimpl't;
Whyles round a rocky scaur it stays,
Whyles in a *wiel* it dimpl't."

Varand, to warrant, protect, 3411. R. *warandir.*

Varnit, warned, 622.

Vassolag, a deed of prowess. Pasing vassolag, surpassing valour, 257. R. has *vasselage*, courage, valour, valourous deeds, as indicative of the fulfilment of the duties of a *vassal.* We now speak of rendering *good service.*

Vassolage, valour, 2724.

Veir, were, 818.

Veris, wars, 305. See *Were.*

Veryng, were, 2971. A.S. *wǽron.*

Vicht, a wight, a person, 10, 55, 67. A.S. *wiht.*

Virslyng, wrestling, struggling, 3384. J. gives the forms *warsell, wersill.*

Visare, wiser, 607.

Viting, to know, 410. A.S. *witan.*

Vncouth, lit. *unknown;* hence little known, rare, valuable, 1734. A.S. *uncúð.*

Vodis, woods, 1000.

Vombe, womb, bowels, 375. Goth. *wamba.*

Vondit, wounded, 700.

Vpwarpith, warped up, i.e. drawn up, 63. See Note to this line. It occurs in Gawain Douglas's prologue to his translation of the 12th Book of the Æneid. Du. *opwerpen*, from Goth. *waírpan*, to cast.

Vsyt, used, 1197, 1208.

Vyre, a cross-bow bolt, 1092. R. *vire;* cf. Lat. *vertere.*

Wald, would, 419, 470, etc.

Walkin, to waken, wake, 1239. See *Awalk.*

Wapnis, weapons, 241. A.S. *wǽpen*, or *wǽpn.*

Ward, world, 3184. Grose's Provincial Dictionary gives *Ward* = world; and the omission of the *l* is not uncommon; see *Genesis and Exodus* (E.E. T.S.), ll. 32, 1315.

Wassolage, valour, 2708. See *Vassolag.*

Wat, know, 512.

Wawasouris, vavasours, 1729. A *Vavasour* was a sub-vassal, holding a small fief dependent on a larger fief; a sort of esquire. R. *vavaseur.*

Weil, very. Weil long, a very long time, 79. Comp. Ger. *viel*, J.

Wencussith, vanquisheth, 3331; vanquished, 3337.

Wencust, vanquished, 2841.

Wend, (1) to go, 2191; (2) weened, thought, 3481.

Wentail, ventaile, a part of the helmet which opened to admit air, 1056. R. *ventaile;* from Lat. *ventus.*

Were, (1) war. Fr. *guerre.* R. *werre*, 308, etc. (2) doubt, 84, etc. "But were," without doubt. A.S. *wǽr*, cautious, *wary.* (3) worse, 1930. Burns has *waur.*

Wering, weary, 58. A.S. *wérig.*

Werray, very, true, 1262, 2017.

Werroure, warrior, 248.

Weriour, warrior, 663.

Wers, worse, 515.

Weryng, were, 2493.

Wex, to be grieved, be vexed, 156.

Weyn, vain, 382, 524.

Weyne, *in phr.* but weyne, without doubt, 2880. A.S. *wénan*, to ween, to suppose.

Whill, until, 1136, J. Formed from A.S. *hwíl*, a period of time.
Wice, advice, counsel, 1909. Shortened from Awys.
Wichsaif, vouchsafe, 355, 1391.
Wichsauf, *id.* 2364.
Wicht, wight, person, 131.
Wicht, strong, nimble, 248. "Su-G. *wig*," J. Sw. *vig.*
Wight, with, 918. Possibly mis-written.
Wist, knew, 225, 1047. See *Wit.*
Wit, to know, 268. A.S. *witan;* pres. *ic wát*, past tense, *ic wiste.*
Wit, knowledge, 2504.
With, by, 723.
Withschaif, vouchsafe, 1458.
With-thy, on this condition, 961. See *For-thy.*
Wnkouth, little known, 146. See *Vncouth.*
Wnwemmyt, undefiled, 2097. A.S. *wam*, *wem*, a spot.
Wnwyst, unknown, secretly, 219, 269.
Wod (wood), mad, 3334, 3440. A.S. *wód.* Goth. *wóds.*
Woid, mad, 2695. Perhaps we should read *woud.*
Wonde, wand, rod, or sceptre of justice, 1601, 1891. J.
Wonk, winked, 1058.
Wonne, to dwell, 2046. A.S. *wunian.*
Worschip, honour, 1158, 1164. A.S. *weorð-scipe.*
Wot, know, 192, etc. See *Wit.*
Wox, voice, 13. Lat. *vox.*
Woyß, voice, 3473.
Wrechitnes, misery, 2102; miserliness, niggardliness, 1795, 1859.
Wy, reason; "to euery wy," for every reason, on all accounts, 2356. Compare *Quhy.*
Wycht, strong, nimble, 2592. See *Wicht.*
Wynyth, getteth, acquireth, 1832.
Wyre, a cross-bow bolt, 3290. See *Vyre.*
Wys, vice, 1795. Wysis, 1540.

Y, written for "th." Thus we find "oyer" for "other," etc. The error arose with scribes who did not understand either the true form or force of the old symbol þ.
Yaf, gave, 387.
Yald, yield, 553; yielded, 558. A.S. *gildan.*
Yclepit, called, 414.
Yef, give, 563.
Yeif, give, 923.
Yer, year, 610. Used instead of the plural "yeris," as in l. 3243.
Yewyne, given, 1500.
Ygrave, buried, 1800. Comp. Ger. *begraben.*
Yhere, ear, 1576.
Yher, year, 2064. Used instead of "yheris," 3243.
Yhis, yes, 1397.
Yis, yes, 514; this, 160.
Ylys, isles, 2858, 2882.
Ymong, among, 821.
Yneuch, enough, 2135. A.S. *genog.*
Yolde, yielded (to be), 951, 1088.
Ystatut, appointed, 2529. Fr. *statuer.*
Ywyß, certainly, 1798, 1942. See *Iwyß.*
ȝeme, to take of, regard, have respect to, 665. A.S. *géman.*
ȝere, year, 342.
ȝerys, years, 23, 1432.
ȝewith, giveth, 1772.
ȝha, yes, 2843. Ger. *ja.*
ȝhe, ye, 921. Observe that, as in this line, *ye* (A.S. *ge*) is the *nominative*, and *you* (A.S. *eów*) the *objective* case.
ȝhed, went, 1486. Ch. has *yede.*

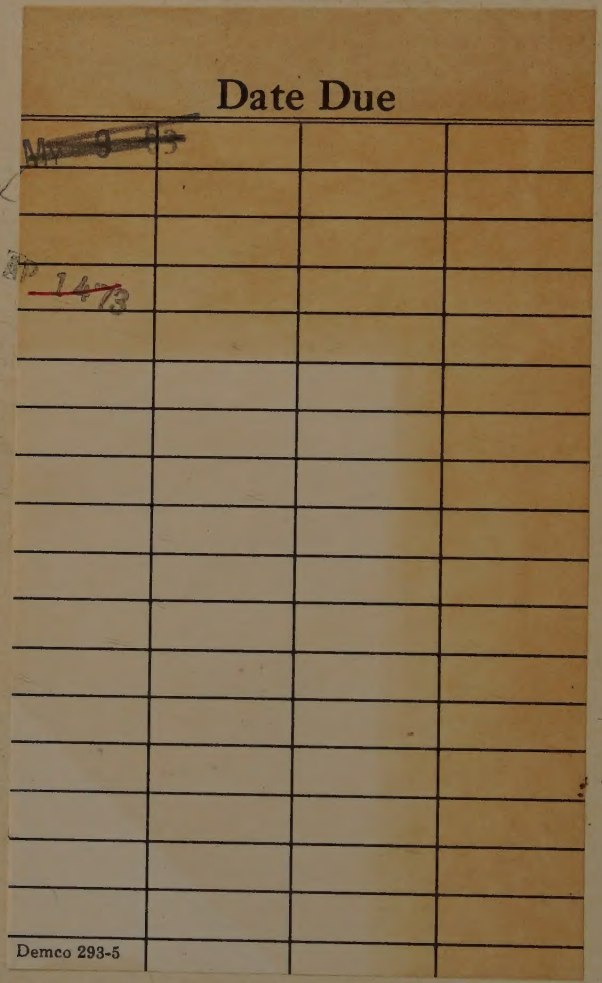
A.S. *ic eôde*, past tense of *gán*, to go. Goth. *ik ïddja*, past tense of *gaggan*, to go.
ȝher, year, 2064, 2274.
ȝhing, young, 2868.
ȝhis, yes, 1397.
ȝhouth-hed, youth-hood, youth, 2772.
ȝhud, went, 2696. See *ȝhed*.
ȝis, yes, 3406.
ȝolde, yielded, 291, 380, 951. A.S. *ic geald*, past tense of *gyldan*, to pay, to yield.
ȝude, went, 2944. See *ȝhed*.

INDEX OF NAMES, ETC.

Albanak, 202, 1447.
Alexander, 1837.
Alphest, 57.
Amytans, 1304, 2446.
Angus, 2858.
April, 1.
Arachell, 434.
Ari s, 336.
Arthur (*passim*).
Ban, 202, 1447.
Bible, the, 1483.
Brandellis, 3086.
Brandymagus, 2884, 3430.
Camelot, 275, 280, 357, 407.
Cardole, 2153.
Carlisle, 347.
Christ, 2046.
Clamedeus, 2881, 3259.
Dagenet, 278.
Daniel, 1365.
Danzelome, 435.
Esquyris, 2591, 2609, etc.
First-conquest king, 1064, etc.; 2568, etc.
Gahers, 3087.
Galiot (*passim*).
Galys Gwyans, 2605, 2613, etc.
Galygantynis, 599.
Galloway, 2690.
Gawane (*passim*).
Gwynans or Gwyans. See *Galys.*
Gyonde or Gyande, 302, 551, 637.
Harwy, 2853, 3206, etc.
Herynes (*i.e.* Hermes), 436.
Hundred knights, king of, 1545, 1554.
Jhesu, 2046, 2096.
Kay, 254, 355, 3081, etc.
Lady of the Lake, 220, 223.
Lancelot (*passim*); appears as the *red* knight, 991, etc.; as the *black* knight, 2430, etc.
Logris, 2301.
Maleginis, 806. See *Malenginys.*
Malenginys, 2873, 3151, 3155. See also *Hundred knights, king of.*
May, 12.
Melyhalt, 283, 895.
Melyhalt, lady of (*passim*).
Moses, 436.
Nembrot (*i.e.* Nimrod), 435.
Nohalt, 255.
Phœbus, 24, 2472, 2486.
Priapus, 51.
Round Table, 795, 3213.
Saturn, 2474.
Scilla, 2483.
Solomon, 1378.
Sygramors, 3083.
Titan, 335.
Valydone, 3249. See *Walydeyne.*
Vanore, 575. See *Wanore.*
Virgin (Mary), 2049, 2087, etc.
Venus, 309.
Wales, 599, 2153.
Walydeyne, 2879.
Wanore, 230.
Wryne, 2867.
Ydrus, 2851, 3152.
Ywan, 2606, 2618, etc.
Ywons, 2861.

RICHARD CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON & BUNGAY.

3 5282 00222 2704



Shelved for Grad
82
E
no
PR1119
A2
no. 6
1870
cop. 2

STACKS PR1119.A2 no.6 1870 c. 2
Lancelot of the Laik.
Lancelot of the Laik
3 5282 00222 2704

P9-CSE-113